DRAFT ENVIRONMENTAL MANAGEMENT PROGRAMME

for

ROAN 2 PV

on

Portions 4,5,9 and 16 of the farm 299 and Grid connection on portion 249 of 297, portion 6 of 299, farm 337 and farm 338

In terms of the

National Environmental Management Act (Act No. 107 of 1998, as amended) & 2014 Environmental Impact Regulations

Prepared for Applicant: AMDA November (Pty) Ltd

Date: 29 April 2022

Author of Report: Dale Holder

Author Email: dale@cape-eaprac.co.za

Report Reference: CML715/07

Department Reference: 2022-01-0003 (Pre-Application Reference)

Cape EAPrac

Cape Environmental Assessment Practitioners

Tel: +27 44 874 0365 PO Box 2070, George 6530

Fax: +27 44 874 0432 17 Progress Street, George

www.cape-eaprac.co.za

DOCUMENT TRACKING

DOCUMENT HISTORY

REVISION	DATE	AUTHOR
Draft EMPR	29 April 2022	Dale Holder – Cape EAPrac

APPROVAL FOR RELEASE

NAME	TITLE	SIGNATURE
Dale Holder	Senior Environmental Practitioner	

DISTRIBUTION

DISTRIBUTION LIST
Department of Forestry, Fisheries and the Environment
AMDA November (Pty) Ltd
Registered and Potential Interested and affected Parties

SUBMISSION AND CORRESPONDENCE

SUBMISSION / CORRESPONDENCE	DATE
Draft Revised EMPr submitted	29 April 2022
Draft Revised EMPr for I&AP comment	29 April 2022
DFFE Comment on Draft Revised EMPr	Pending
Final Revised EMPr submitted	Pending
Final Revised EMPr Approved	Pending

APPOINTED ENVIRONMENTAL ASSESSMENT PRACTITIONER:
Cape EAPrac Environmental Assessment Practitioners PO Box 2070 George 6530 Tel: 044-874 0365 Fax: 044-874 0432 **Report written & compiled by:** Dale Holder (Ndip Nature Conservation), who has over 15 years' experience as an environmental practitioner. **Registrations:** Director, Louise-Mari van Zyl (MA Geography & Environmental Science [US]; Registered Environmental Assessment Practitioner with the Interim Certification Board for Environmental Assessment Practitioners of South Africa, EAPSA). Ms van Zyl has over fifteen years' experience as an environmental practitioner.

PURPOSE OF THIS REPORT:
I&AP review and comment

APPLICANT:
AMDA November (Pty) Ltd

CAPE EAPRAC REFERENCE NO:
CML715/07

DEPARTMENT REFERENCE:
2022-01-0003 (Pre-Application Reference)

SUBMISSION DATE:
29 April 2022

TO BE CITED AS:
Cape EAPrac, 2022. Environmental Management Programme –. Roan 2 PV and associated infrastructure. Report Reference: CML715/07.

EMPR LEGISLATIVE REQUIREMENTS

Appendix 4 of Regulation 982 of the 2014 EIA Regulations contains the required contents of an Environmental Management Programme (EMPr). The checklist below serves as a summary of how these requirements were incorporated into this EMPr.

Requirement	Description
Details of the EAP who prepared the EMPr; and; The expertise of the EAP to prepare an EMPr, including a curriculum vitae.	This EMPr was prepared by Dale Holder of Cape EAPrac who has more than 17 years' experience as an Environmental Assessment Practitioner. The CV of the EAP is attached in appendix M.
A detailed description of the aspects of the activity that are covered by the EMPr as identified by the project description.	This EMP covers all aspects of the project as currently proposed for the Roan 2 PV. • PV modules and mounting structures; • Inverters and transformers; • Cabling; • Battery Energy Storage System (BESS); • Site and internal access roads (up to 8 m wide); • Auxiliary buildings (33 kV switch room, gatehouse and security, control centre, office, warehouse, canteen & visitors centre, staff lockers etc.); • Perimeter fencing and security infrastructure; • Rainwater tanks; • Temporary and permanent laydown areas; • Facility substation. • Grid Conection infrastructure including powerline and substation.
A map at an appropriate scale which superimposes the proposed activity, its associated structures, and infrastructure on the environmental sensitivities of the preferred site, indicating any areas that should be avoided, including buffers	The Site Layout Plan (SLP) attached in Appendix A, includes the sensitive features identified by participating specialists and indicates how these have been incorporated. The "exclusion areas" identified on this SLP as well as all areas outside of the perimeter fencing of the facility are considered as no go areas for construction activities.
A description of the impact management objectives, including management statements, identifying the impacts and risks that need to be avoided, managed and mitigated as identified through the environmental impact assessment process for all the phases of the development including – (i) Planning and design; (ii) Pre-construction activities; (iii) Construction activities; (iv) Rehabilitation of the environment after construction and where applicable post closure; and (v) Where relevant, operation activities.	Sections 1.3

Requirement	Description
A description and identification of impact management outcomes required for the aspects contemplated above.	Sections 4 -11
A description of the proposed impact management actions, identifying the way the impact management objectives and outcomes contemplated above will be achieved and must, where applicable include actions to – (i) Avoid, modify, remedy control or stop any action, activity or process which causes pollution or environmental degradation; (ii) Comply with any prescribed environmental management standards or practises; (iii) Comply with any applicable provisions of the Act regarding closure, where applicable; and (iv) Comply with any provisions of the Act regarding financial provisions for rehabilitation, where applicable.	Sections 4 – 11
The method of monitoring the implantation of the impact management actions contemplated above.	Sections 4 – 11 and section 14
The frequency of monitoring the implementation of the impact management actions contemplated above.	Sections 4 – 11 and section 14
An indication of the persons who will be responsible for the implementation of the impact management actions.	Sections 4 – 11
The time periods within which the impact management actions must be implemented.	Sections 4 – 11 and section 14
The mechanism for monitoring compliance with the impact management actions.	Section 2 and 4-11
A program for reporting on compliance, considering the requirements as prescribed in the Regulations.	Section 2
An environmental awareness plan describing the way – (i) The applicant intends to inform his or her employees of any environmental risk which may result from their work; and (ii) Risks must be dealt with to avoid pollution or the degradation of the environment.	Section 5.2
Any specific information that may be required by the competent authority.	None.

DFFE COMMENT ON EMPR

The competent authority will be provided with an opportunity to comment on this revised EMPr. This comment will be considered and the EMPr updated accordingly.

ENVIRONMENTAL MANAGEMENT PROGRAMME – ROAN 2 PV

in terms of the

National Environmental Management Act, 1998 (Act No. 107 of 1998), as amended & Environmental Impact Regulations 2014

Roan 2 PV

Portions 4,5,9 and 16 of the farm 299 and Grid connection on portion 249 of 297, portion 6 of 299, farm 337 and farm 338.

Submitted for:

Stakeholder Review & Comment

Report Issued by:

Cape Environmental Assessment Practitioners

Tel: 044 874 0365 PO Box 2070

Fax: 044 874 0432 17 Progress Street

Web: www.cape-eaprac.co.za George 6530

ORDER OF REPORT

Overview and History

Environmental Management Programme Revision 3 – Main Report

Appendix A : Site Layout Plan – Roan 2 PV

Appendix B : DFFE Generic EMPr for sub-station and powerline infrastructure (DFFE, 2019)

Appendix C : Stormwater Management Plan

Appendix D : Transportation and Traffic Management Plan

Appendix E : Construction Method Statements (to be appended once approved by the ECO)

:

:

:

TABLE OF CONTENTS

BACKGROUND AND HISTORY

FIGURES

TABLES

EMPR ROAN 2 PV

1. INTRODUCTION

Cape EAPrac has been appointed by the Applicant, AMDA November (Pty) Ltd, as the independent **Environmental Assessment Practitioner** (EAP) responsible for compilation of the **Draft Environmental Management Programme** (EMPr) for the proposed Roan 2 PV.

The key purpose of this EMPr is to ensure that the remedial and mitigation requirements identified during the Basic Assessment Report are implemented during the lifespan of the project (design to decommissioning). The EMPr is thus a management tool used to minimise and mitigate the potential environmental impacts, while maximising the benefits.

A detailed description of the proposed project and a description of the affected environment are provided in the Environmental Impact Report (EIR) which should be referred to where necessary.

It is important that this EMPr be read in conjunction with the Generic EMPr for substation and powerline infrastructure included in Appendix B. As well as the Stormwater Management Plan and Traffic and Transportation Assessment included in appendix C and D.

.

1.1 APPROACH TO THE EMPR

This EMPr addresses the environmental management of the four key phases of the project, namely:

- The design and pre-construction phase;
- The construction phase;
- The operation phase; and
- The closure and decommissioning phase.

1.1.1 Pre-construction Phase

The pre-construction phase of the development refers to the final layout design considerations and the site preparation (fine-scale design and placement, survey of development site and associated infrastructure, demarcation of no-go areas, establishment of site camp and laydown area, vegetation clearing for establishment of internal road network[1]).

1.1.2 Construction Phase

The construction phase of the development refers to the earthworks and the actual construction of the civil works (installation of the PV panel arrays, construction of internal roads, stormwater structures and auxiliary buildings and on-site substation), as well as the external infrastructure such as MV cabling, access roads and gate house. The construction phase will start with the perimeter fencing of the facility and will end with final landscaping and re-vegetation / rehabilitation of the site and surrounding areas.

1.1.3 Operation Phase

The operational phase commences once the facility starts providing power into the electrical network (i.e., at Contractual Operation Date). There may be a stage where both construction and operation activities overlap i.e., occur on site at the same time. The operation phase included the monitoring and maintenance activities required for the efficient functioning of the facility (e.g., cleaning and repair of

- [1] This activity is considered to form both part of the pre-construction and the construction phase

solar arrays, brush-cutting of vegetation etc.), as well as health and integrity of the surrounding environment (e.g., removal alien vegetation, management of erosion etc.).

1.1.4 Closure and Decommissioning Phase

Closure and decommissioning refers to the decommissioning of the panel arrays at the end of their operational lifespan or at the end of the term of the Power Purchase Agreement (PPA). For this report, three possible scenarios are considered, namely:

- Continuation of operations under an extended PPA
- The re-use, repair &/ upgrade of the facility for alternative power generation;
- The total decommissioning of the solar facility.

1.2 PURPOSE

This EMPr is relevant to the Roan 2 PV renewable energy project, and all listed and specified activities necessary for the realisation of this project.

1.3 OBJECTIVE

The objective of this EMPr is to prescribe project specific and generally accepted impact management outcomes and impact management actions associated with the development of the Roan 2 PV and its associated infrastructure.

- To ensure the least possible impact to:
    - Existing infrastructure on and adjacent to the site;
    - Indigenous flora and fauna (biophysical environment); and
    - Water quality of surface and groundwater on and surrounding the site. Particularly the water quality exiting the site.
- To ensure that construction and development are undertaken with consideration to all environmental factors; and
- Where such damage occurs, provision is made for re-instatement and rehabilitation.

1.4 SCOPE

The scope of this EMPr applies to all pre-construction, construction, operation and decommissioning requirements for the Roan 2 PV. This EMPr applies to all listed and specified activities authorised in the EA and amendments thereto that are necessary for the realisation of this project.

1.5 EMPR APPROVAL AND REVISIONS

This EMPr, once approved, is a legally binding document and contravention with this document constitutes a contravention with the Environmental Authorisation.

The supplementary plans annexed to this EMPr must be read in conjunction with this EMPr.

The EMPr may however require amendment at certain stages through the lifespan of the project. The incidences which may require the amendment of this document include:

- Changes in environmental legislation;
- Results of post-construction monitoring and audit;
- Per instruction from the competent authority; and
- Changes in technology and best practice principles.

It must be noted that any amendments to the EMPr actions that do not change the impact management outcomes or objectives may be immediately affected by the holder of the EA and submitted in the next environmental audit report submitted in terms of the regulations. Any amendments to the impact

management outcomes need to be formally approved by the competent authority before they can be effected.

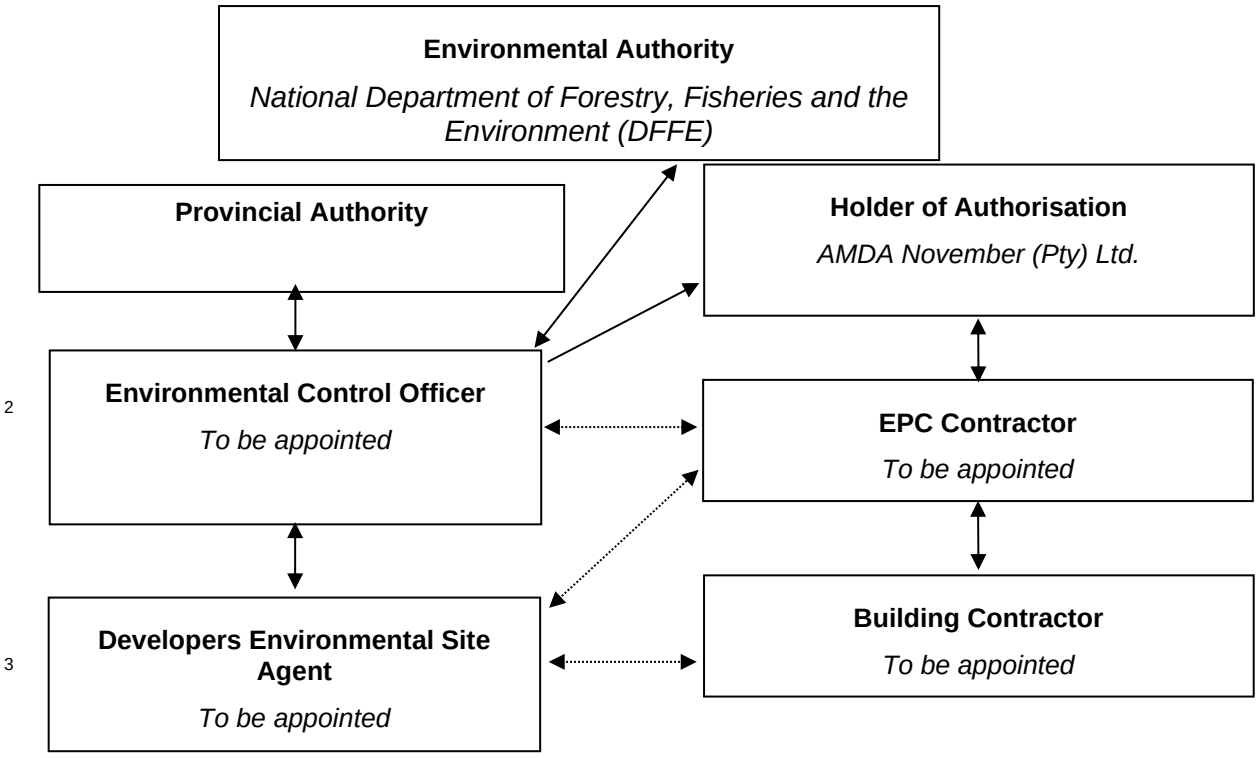
1.6 CONTRACTUAL OBLIGATIONS

This EMPr must be included in ALL tender and contract documentation associated with this project. It must be noted that this EMPr is relevant and binding not only on the activities associated with the construction of the PV project, but also for all associated infrastructure authorised as part of the EA and any amendments thereto.

1.7 ORGANISATIONAL STRUCTURE AND RESPONSIBILITIES.

To ensure effective implementation of the EMPr, it is necessary to identify and define the organisational structure for the implementation of this document.

The proposed organisational structure during **construction** is as follows:



- [2] This refers to the Independent Environmental Control Officer.
- [3] This refers to the Developers Environmental Site Agent who is not necessarily independent of the EPC.

Figure 1: EMPr organisational structure during the construction phase

The proposed organisational structure during the **operation** of the facility is as follows:

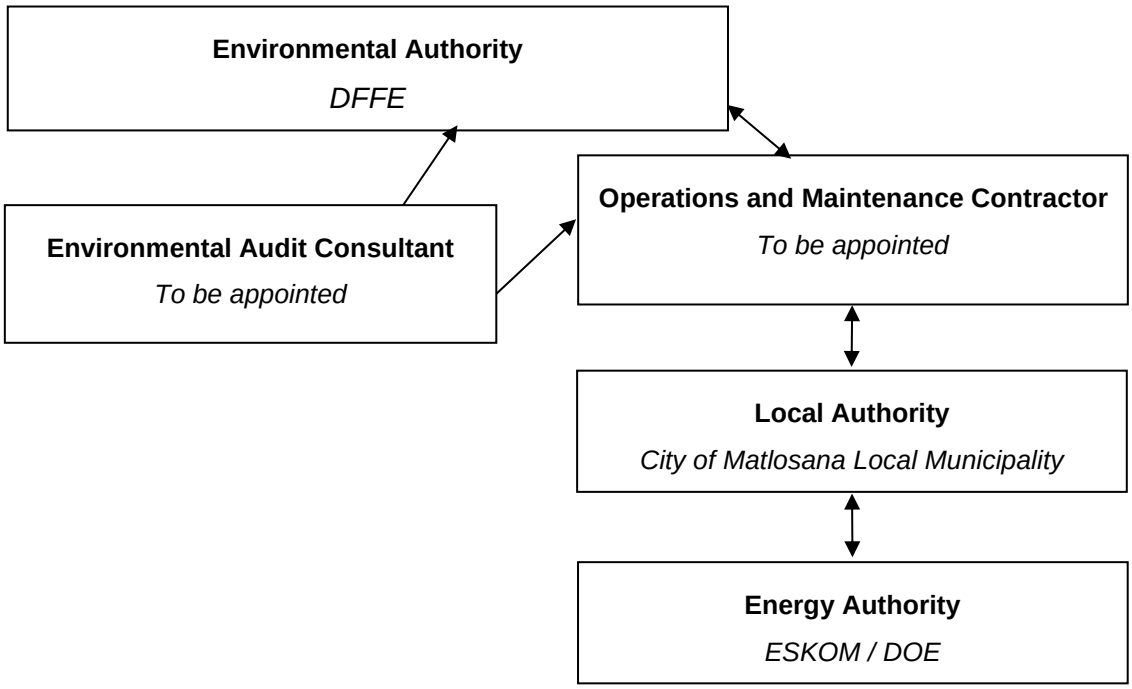


Figure 2: EMPr organisational structure during the operation phase.

Details regarding the roles and responsibilities of the various parties in these organisational structures are included in the table below.

The effective implementation of this EMPr is dependent on established and clear roles, responsibilities and reporting lines. This table below gives guidance to the various environmental roles and reporting lines,

Table 1: Guide to roles and responsibilities for implementation of an EMPr

Responsible Person(s)	Role and Responsibilities
Holder of the EA[4]	Role The holder of the EA is ultimately accountable for ensuring compliance with the EMPr and any conditions of approval from the competent authority. An Independent environmental control officer (ECO) must be contracted by the Holder of the EA to independently and objectively monitor the implementation of the EMPr according to relevant environmental legislation, and the conditions of the EA.

- [4] In some cases the Holder of the EA and the EPC contractor may be the same entity, in which case this party will be responsible for the requirements outlined on both roles.

Responsible Person(s)	Role and Responsibilities
	The holder of the EA is further responsible for providing and giving mandate to enable the ECO to perform responsibilities and must ensure that the ECO is integrated as part of the project team while remaining independent. Responsibilities - Be fully conversant with the conditions of the EA; - Ensure that all stipulations within the EMPr are communicated and adhered to by the EPC; - Issuing of site instructions to the EPC for corrective actions required; - Monitor the implementation of the EMPr throughout the project by means of site inspections and meetings. Overall management of the project and EMPr implementation; and - Ensure that periodic environmental audits are undertaken on the project implementation.
Independent Environmental Control Officer (ECO)	Role The Holder of the EA must appoint an ECO. The ECO must be independent of the holder of the EA and the EPC and have appropriate training and experience in the implementation of environmental management specifications. The primary role of the ECO is to act as an independent quality controller and monitoring agent regarding all environmental concerns and associated environmental impacts. In this respect, the ECO is to conduct monthly site inspections, attend regular site meetings, pre-empt problems and suggest mitigation and be available to advise on incidental issues that arise. The ECO is also required to prepare internal compliance audits (in the form of the monthly environmental control report), verifying the weekly environmental checklists submitted by the ESA. The ECO provides feedback to the Holder of the EA and the competent authority regarding all environmental matters. The EPC and the holder of the EA are answerable to the Environmental Control Officer for non-compliance with the Specifications as set out in the EA and EMPr. The ECO provides feedback to the holder of the EA, who in turn reports back to the EPC, as required. Issues of non-compliance raised by the ECO must be taken up by the holder of the EA and resolved with the Contractor as per the conditions of their contract. Decisions regarding environmental procedures, specifications and requirements which have a cost implication (i.e., those that are deemed to be a variation, not allowed for in the EMPr specification) must be endorsed by the Holder of the EA. Responsibilities The responsibilities of the ECO will include the following: - Be aware of the findings and conclusions of all EA conditions related to the development; - Be familiar with the recommendations and mitigation measures of this EMPr; - Manage and review all reporting undertaken by the ESA. - Be conversant with relevant environmental legislation, policies and procedures, and ensure compliance with them; - Undertake regular (at least monthly) and comprehensive site inspections / audits of the construction site according to the generic EMPr and applicable licenses in order to monitor compliance as required; - Compilation and administration of Environmental control reports to ensure that the environmental management measures are implemented and are effective; - Monitoring the performance of the Contractors and ensuring compliance with the EMPr and associated Method Statements; - In consultation with the holder of the EA order the removal of person(s) and/or equipment which are in contravention of the specifications of the EMPr and/or environmental licenses; - Liaison between the Holder of the EA, EPC contractor, authorities and other lead stakeholders on all environmental concerns;

Responsible Person(s)	Role and Responsibilities
	- Compile a monthly environmental control report highlighting any non-compliance issues as well as satisfactory or exceptional compliance with the EMPr; - Validating the weekly environmental checklists, which are to be prepared by the ESA; - Checking the ESA's record of environmental incidents (spills, impacts, legal transgressions etc.) as well as corrective and preventive actions taken; - Checking the EPC's public complaints register in which all complaints are recorded, as well as action taken; - Assisting in the resolution of conflicts; - In case of non-compliances, the ECO must first communicate this to the Senior Site Supervisor, who has the power to ensure this matter is addressed. Should no action or insufficient action be taken, the ECO may report this matter to the authorities as non-compliance; - Maintenance, update and review of the EMPr; - Communication of all modifications to the EMPr to the relevant stakeholders - Review and approval contractors' method statements.
Developers Environmental Site Agent (ESA)	<u>Role</u> The Holder of the EA or the EPC must appoint an independent ESA in terms of this EMPr. The ESA need not be independent of the holder of the EA and the EPC but must report to the ECO and have appropriate training and experience in the implementation of environmental management specifications. The primary role of the ESA is to act as a full-time independent quality controller and monitoring agent regarding all environmental concerns and associated environmental impacts. In this respect, the ECO is to conduct daily site inspections, attend regular site meetings, pre-empt problems and suggest mitigation and be available to advise on incidental issues that arise. The ESA is also required to undertake internal compliance audits (in the form of the weekly environmental checklist) and submit these to the ECO and the EPC contractor. The ESA provides feedback to the ECO, who in turn communicates with the holder of the EA and the competent authority regarding all environmental matters. Decisions regarding environmental procedures, specifications and requirements which have a cost implication (i.e., those that are deemed to be a variation, not allowed for in the EMPr specification) must be endorsed by the Holder of the EA. <u>Responsibilities</u> The responsibilities of the ESA will include the following: - Preparation of Environmental Method Statements; - Daily environmental monitoring; - Be aware of the findings and conclusions of all EA conditions related to the development; - Be familiar with the recommendations and mitigation measures of this EMPr; - Report to the ECO. - Be conversant with relevant environmental legislation, policies and procedures, and ensure compliance with them; - Compilation and administration of weekly environmental checklists to ensure that the environmental management measures are implemented and are effective; - Monitoring the performance of the Contractors and ensuring compliance with the EMPr and associated Method Statements; - Environmental induction of all staff entering the site to perform duties; - Maintaining a record of environmental incidents (spills, impacts, legal transgressions etc.) as well as corrective and preventive actions taken; - Assisting in the resolution of conflicts; - Reporting non-compliances to the ECO; - Facilitate environmental training for all personnel on the site – this may range from carrying out the training, to reviewing the training programmes of the EPC contractor;

Responsible Person(s)	Role and Responsibilities
EPC Contractor **NB:** All references to the EPC contractor will include all sub-contractors responsible for any tasks in respect of the development. All Environmental Management Actions allocated to the EPC contractor will apply equally to all sub-contractors responsible for any specific task.	Role The EPC Contractor or any relevant subcontractor appoints their own dEO and has overall responsibility for ensuring that all work, activities, and actions linked to the delivery of the contract are in line with the EMPr and that Method Statements are implemented as described. External contractors must ensure compliance with this EMPr while performing the onsite activities as per their contract with the Project Developer. The contractors are required, where specified, to provide Method Statements setting out in detail how the impact management actions contained in the EMPr will be implemented during the development of this facility. Responsibilities - project delivery and quality control for the development services as per appointment; - employ a suitably qualified person to monitor and report to the Project Developer's appointed person on the daily activities on-site during the construction period; - ensure that safe, environmentally acceptable working methods and practices are implemented, and that equipment is properly operated and maintained, to facilitate proper access and enable any operation to be carried out safely; - attend on site meeting(s) prior to the commencement of activities to confirm the procedure and designated activity zones; - ensure that contractors' staff repair, at their own cost, any environmental damage because of a contravention of the specifications contained in EMPr, to the satisfaction of the ECO.

National Government, Provincial Government or Local Authorities must be granted access for the purposed of monitoring compliance with the EA or this EMPr.

1.8 PROPOSED ACTIVITY

The following components form part of the proposed Roan 2 PV.

- PV modules and mounting structures;
- Inverters and transformers;
- Cabling;
- Battery Energy Storage System (BESS);
- Site and internal access roads (up to 8 m wide);
- Auxiliary buildings (33 kV switch room, gatehouse and security, control centre, office, warehouse, canteen & visitors centre, staff lockers etc.);
- Perimeter fencing and security infrastructure;
- Rainwater tanks;
- Temporary and permanent laydown areas;
- Facility substation.
- Grid connection including substation and powerline:

It is envisioned that all required services (water, sewerage and waste) will be provided by the local municipality.

The main physical activities (i.e., those activities that need to be managed from an environmental perspective) that will form part of the construction phase are:

- Removal of vegetation for the proposed infrastructure;
- Excavations for infrastructure and associated infrastructure;
- Establishment of a laydown area for equipment;
- Stockpiling of topsoil and cleared vegetation;
- Transportation of material and equipment to site, and personnel to and from site;
- Construction of the solar field, overhead power line, facility substation and additional infrastructure; and
- Rehabilitation of Disturbed areas.

The following main activities will occur during the operational phase:

- Generation of electricity;
- Maintenance of the solar facility, including washing of panels;
- Management of the vegetation within the PV development; and
- Maintenance of the distribution line

In the event of decommissioning, the main aim would be to return the land to its original, pre-construction condition. Should the unlikely need for decommissioning arise (i.e., if the actual SEF becomes outdated or the land needs to be used for other purposes), the decommissioning procedures will be undertaken in line with the EMPr and any legislation or guidelines relevant at the time and the site will be rehabilitated and returned to its pre-construction state. Possible decommissioning activities will include removing the infrastructure, and mechanisms to promote the re-growth of natural vegetation.

2. DOCUMENT CONTROL, REPORTING AND COMPLIANCE

To ensure accountability and effective implementation of the EMPr, a number of reporting systems[5], documentation controls and compliance mechanisms must be in place for all project infrastructure as a minimum requirement.

2.1 DOCUMENT CONTROL AND FILING

The holder of the EA is solely responsible for the upkeep and management of the official EMPr file. As a minimum, all documentation detailed below will be stored in the EMPr file. A hard copy of all documentation shall be filed, while an electronic copy may be kept where relevant. A duplicate file will be maintained by the ECO. The EMPr file must be always on site and available on request by the Competent Authority or other relevant authorities. The EMPr file will form part of any environmental audits undertaken as prescribed in the EIA Regulations.

2.2 DOCUMENTATION TO BE AVAILABLE

At the commencement of the project the following preliminary list of documents shall be placed in the EMPr file and be accessible at all times:

- Full copy of the signed EA from the Competent Authority in terms of NEMA, granting approval for the development;
- Any Amendments of the EA from the competent Authority;
- Copy of the EMPr as well as any amendments thereof;
- All method statements prepared by the EPC and submitted to the ECO for approval;
- All weekly checklists prepared by the Environmental Site Agent (ESA);
- All monthly ECO reports prepared by the ECO;
- Minutes and attendance register of environmental site meetings;
- Attendance registers of all environmental inductions;
- An up-to-date environmental incident log;
- A copy of all instructions or directives issued;
- A copy of all corrective actions signed off. The corrective actions must be filed in such a way that a clear reference is made to the non-compliance record; and
- Complaints register.

[5] These reporting systems are adapted from the various generic EMPrs gazetted by the Department of Forestry, Fisheries and the Environment.

All the records relating to monitoring and auditing must be kept on site and made available for inspection to any relevant and competent authority.

2.3 WEEKLY ENVIRONMENTAL CHECKLIST

The ESA is required to complete a Weekly Environmental Checklist, the format of which should be approved by the ECO, with input from the EPC and the holder of the EA.

The ESA is required to sign and date the checklist, retain a copy in the EMPr file and submit a copy of the completed checklist to the EPC and the ECO on a weekly basis. The EPC must utilise the weekly checklists to initiate any corrective actions detailed therein.

2.4 MONTHLY ENVIRONMENTAL CONTROL REPORT

The ECO is responsible for compilation of the monthly ECO Report. The weekly checklists above will form the basis for the Monthly Environmental Control Reports and must be supplemented by the outcomes of the ECO inspection. The monthly Environmental Control Reports must be submitted to the following parties:

- The Competent Authority – Director Compliance Monitoring;
- The Provincial Conservation Authority;
- The DFFE' sub-directorate, Forestry;
- The Holder of the EA;
- The EPC; and
- All attendees of Environmental Site Meetings.

Copies of all completed Environmental Control reports must be attached as Annexures to the Environmental Audit Report as required in terms of the regulations.

2.5 ENVIRONMENTAL SITE MEETINGS

Minutes of the environmental site meetings shall be kept. The minutes must include an attendance register and will be attached to the Monthly Environmental Control Report that is distributed to attendees. Each set of minutes must clearly record "Matters for Attention" that will be reviewed at the next meeting.

2.6 METHOD STATEMENTS

The method statement will be done in such detail that the ECO is able to assess whether the contractor's proposal is in accordance with the EMPr. Commencement of any specific activity may not commence until such time as the method statement for that activity is approved by both the ECO and the project manager.

The method statement must cover applicable details regarding:

- development procedures;
- materials and equipment to be used;
- getting the equipment to and from site;
- how the equipment/ material will be moved while on site;
- how and where material will be stored;
- the containment (or action to be taken if containment is not possible) of leaks or spills of any liquid or material that may occur;
- timing and location of activities;
- compliance/ non-compliance with the EMPr; and
- any other information deemed necessary by the ECOs.

Unless indicated otherwise by the ECO, the EPC shall provide the following method statements to the Project Manager no less than 14 calendar days prior to the commencement date of each activity:

- Site establishment – Site Camps, Lay-down or storage areas, satellite camps, infrastructure;
- Workshop or plant emergency maintenance;
- Drilling and Piling operations
- Handling, transport and storage of Hazardous Chemical Substance's;
- Vegetation management – Protected species relocation, site clearing, alien vegetation;
- Access management – Roads, gates, crossings etc.;
- Fire plan;
- Waste management – transport, storage, segregation, classification, disposal (all waste streams);
- Social interaction – complaints management, compensation claims, access to properties etc.;
- Water – use (source, abstraction and disposal), access and all related information, crossings and mitigation;
- Emergency preparedness – Spills, training, other environmental emergencies;
- Dust and noise management methodologies;
- Fauna interaction and risk management; and
- Heritage, Archaeology and Palaeontology management.

It is the prerogative of the ECO to request additional method statements for any other aspect of the proposed development.

The ESA and ECO shall monitor and ensure that the contractors perform in accordance with these method statements. A copy of all method statements must be kept on the EMPr file and appended to the Monthly ECO report on the month following their approval.

2.7 ENVIRONMENTAL INCIDENT LOG

The ESA is required to maintain an up-to-date and current Environmental Incident Log (environmental diary). The Environmental Incident Log is a means to record all environmental incidents and/or all non-compliance events.

An environmental incident is defined as:

- Any deviation from the listed impact management actions (listed in this EMPr) that is identified by the ESA or ECO (for example, a contractor's staff member littering or a drip tray that has not been emptied);
- Any environmental impact resulting from an action or activity by a contractor in contravention of the environmental stipulations and guidelines listed in the EMPr which as a single event would have a minor impact but which if cumulative and continuous would have a significant effect (for example no toilet paper available in the ablutions); and
- General environmental information such as road kills or injured wildlife.

The ESA must record all environmental incidents in the Environmental Incident Log. All incidents regardless of severity must be reported to the ECO and the Holder of the EA. The Log is to be kept in the EMPr file (and appended to the monthly environmental control reports) and at a minimum the following will be recorded for each environmental incident:

- The date and time of the incident;
- Description of the incident;
- The name of the Contractor / subcontractor responsible;
- The significance of the incident must be noted;
- If the incident is listed as significant, a non-compliance notice must be issued, and recorded in the log;
- Remedial or corrective action taken to mitigate the incident; and
- Record of repeat minor offences by the same contractor or staff member.

2.8 NON-COMPLIANCE

In response to a significant incident, re-occurring incidents or unattended incidents, a non-compliance notice will be issued to the responsible contractor by the ECO via the Holder of the EA or Project Manager. The non-compliance notice will be issued in writing; a copy filed in the EMPr file and will at a minimum include the following:

- Time and date of the non-compliance;
- Name of the contractor responsible;
- Nature and description of the non-compliance;
- Recommended / required corrective action; and
- Date by which the corrective action to be completed.

The contractors shall act immediately when a notice of non-compliance is received and correct whatever is the cause for the issuing of the notice. Complaints received regarding activities on the development site pertaining to the environment shall be recorded in a dedicated register and the response noted with the date and action taken. The ECO should be made aware of any complaints. Any non-compliance with the agreed procedures of the EMPr is a transgression of the various statutes and laws that define how the environment is managed.

Failure to redress the cause shall be reported by the ECO to the Competent Authority for them to deal with the transgression, as it deems fit, including the issue of penalties as detailed in section 21 of this EMPr. The contractor is deemed not to have complied with the EMPr if, inter alia, there is a deviation from the environmental conditions, impact management outcomes and impact management actions as approved in the EMPr.

2.9 CORRECTIVE ACTION RECORDS

For each non-compliance notice issued, a documented corrective action must be recorded. On receiving a non-compliance notice from the ESA or ECO, the EPC must ensure that the corrective actions required take place within the stipulated timeframe. On completion of the corrective action the contractors Environmental Officer is to issue a Corrective Action Report in writing to the ECO.

If satisfied that the corrective action has been completed, the ECO are to sign-off on the Corrective Action Report and attach the report to the non-compliance notice in the EMPr file. A corrective action is considered complete once the report has been signed off by the ECO.

2.10 PHOTOGRAPHIC RECORD

A digital photographic record will be kept by the ESA. The photographic record will be used to show before, during and post rehabilitation evidence of the site as well as in cases of damages claims if they arise. Each image must be dated, include a co-ordinate and a brief description note attached. The ESA photographic record must form part of the weekly Environmental Checklists.

The EPC shall:

- Allow the ESA and ECO access to take photographs of all areas, activities and actions.

The ESA and ECO shall keep an electronic database of photographic records which will include:

- Pictures of all areas designated as work areas, site camp, development sites and storage areas taken before these areas are set up;
- All bunding and fencing;
- Road conditions and road verges;
- Condition of all farm fences;
- Topsoil storage areas;
- All areas to be cordoned off during construction;

- Waste management sites;
- Ablution facilities (inside and out);
- All completed corrective actions for non-compliances;
- All required signage;
- Photographic recordings of incidents;
- All areas before, during and post rehabilitation; and

2.11 COMPLAINTS REGISTER

The EPC shall keep a current and up-to-date complaints register. The complaints register is to be a record of all complaints received from communities, stakeholders and individuals. The Complaints Record shall:

- Record the name and contact details of the complainant;
- Record the time and date of the complaint;
- Contain a detailed description of the complaint;
- Where relevant and appropriate, contain photographic evidence of the complaint or damage (ECO / ESA to take relevant photographs); and
- Contain a copy of the ECO's written response to each complaint received and keep a record of any further correspondence with the complainant. The ECO's written response will include a description of any corrective action to be taken and must be signed by the Contractor, ECO and affected party. Where a damage claim is issued by the complainant, the ECO shall respond as described in below.

2.12 CLAIMS FOR DAMAGES

If a Claim for Damages is submitted by a community, landowner or individual, the ECO shall:

- Record the full detail of the complaint as described in above;
- The EPC will evaluate the claim and associated damage and submit the evaluation to the holder of the EA for approval;
- Following consideration by the Holder of the EA the claim is to be resolved and settled immediately, or the reason for not accepting the claim communicated in writing to the claimant.

2.13 INTERACTIONS WITH AFFECTED PARTIES

Open, transparent and good relations with affected landowners, communities and regional staff are an essential aspect to the successful management and mitigation of environmental impacts.

The ESA shall:

- Ensure that all queries, complaints and claims are dealt within an agreed timeframe[6];
- Ensure that any or all agreements are documented, signed by all parties and a record of the agreement kept in the EMPr file and submitted to the ECO;
- Ensure that telephone numbers to register complaints are made available to all landowners and affected parties; and
- Ensure that contact with affected parties is always courteous.

2.14 ENVIRONMENTAL AUDITS

- [6] This relates to complaints and claims of an environmental nature only and does not pertain to complaints and claims of any other nature.

Internal environmental audits of the activity and implementation of the EMPr must be undertaken in the form of the monthly environmental control reports. The findings and outcomes must be included in the EMPr file and submitted to the ECO for inclusion in the environmental control report to be submitted to the competent authority on a monthly basis.

At a minimum, the monthly environmental control report is to cover the following:

- Weekly Environmental Checklists;
- Deviations and non-compliances with the checklists;
- Non-compliances issued;
- Completed and reported corrective actions;
- Environmental Monitoring;
- Results of Dust Fall out Monitoring;
- General environmental findings and actions; and
- Minutes of the Environmental Site Meetings.

In addition to the internal environmental audit (which takes place as part of the monthly environmental control report), an external audit must be undertaken:

- Within 6 months of commencement of construction activities.
- Within 30 days of completion of construction activities.
- Within 30 days of completion of rehabilitation activities.

These external audits cannot be undertaken by the ECO and must be undertaken by an external audit consultant.

Additional audits during the operational phase of the activity are to be done at the frequency determined in the regulations.

3. LEGISLATIVE AND POLICY FRAMEWORK

In terms of legislative provisions, this EMPr must satisfy:

- Section 24N of the NEMA, as amended;
- Appendix 4 of the NEMA EIA Regulations published in Government Notice No. R 326 of 7 April 2017. These regulations regulate and prescribe the content of the EMPr and specify the type of supporting information that must accompany the submission of the report to the authorities;
- The requirements outlined in the Environmental Authorisation and
- Gazetted generic EMPrs for the power line and substation infrastructure.

Table 2: Compliance with Section 24N of NEMA

Requirements of Section 24N of NEMA	Reference in this EMPr?
2. The environmental management programme must contain- information on any proposed management, mitigation, protection or remedial measures that will be undertaken to address the environmental impacts that have been identified in a report contemplated in subsection 24(1A), including environmental impacts or objectives in respect of: - planning and design; - pre-construction and construction activities; - the operation or undertaking of the activity in question; - the rehabilitation of the environment; and - closure, if applicable;	Section 5,6 & 14 of this EMPr
Details of the person who prepared the environmental management programme; and the expertise of that person to prepare an environmental management programme;	Please refer to the summary page at the beginning of this report for these details.
A detailed description of the aspects of the activity that are covered by the environmental management programme;	Section 1.8

Requirements of Section 24N of NEMA	Reference in this EMPr?
Information identifying the persons who will be responsible for the implementation of the measures contemplated in paragraph (a);	Columns in Section 5,6 and 14 of the EMPr detail the monitoring responsibility.
Information in respect of the mechanisms proposed for monitoring compliance with the environmental management programme and for reporting on the compliance;	Section 5, 6, 14 and 16
As far as is reasonably practicable, measures to rehabilitate the environment affected by the undertaking of any listed activity or specified activity to its natural or predetermined state or to a land use which conforms to the generally accepted principle of sustainable development; and	Section 8
A description of the way it intends to- - modify, remedy, control or stop any action, activity or process which causes pollution or environmental degradation; - remedy the cause of pollution or degradation and migration of pollutants; and - comply with any prescribed environmental management standards or practices.	Section 1.2 to 1.4
3. The environmental management programme must, where appropriate- - set out time periods within which the measures contemplated in the environmental management programme must be implemented; - contain measures regulating responsibilities for any environmental damage, pollution, pumping and treatment of polluted or extraneous water or ecological degradation which may occur inside and outside the boundaries of the operations in question; and - develop an environmental awareness plan describing the manner in which- - the applicant intends to inform his or her employees of any environmental risk which may result from their work; and - risks must be dealt with to avoid pollution or the degradation of the environment.	Sections 3 – 14 all contain the timeframes for the associated measures.
5. The Minister, the Minister responsible for mineral resources or an MEC may call for additional information and may direct that the environmental management programme in question must be adjusted in such a way as the Minister, the Minister responsible for mineral resources or the MEC may require.	Not applicable at this stage.
6. The Minister, the Minister responsible for mineral resources or an MEC may at any time after he or she has approved an application for an environmental authorisation approve an amended environmental management programme.	Not applicable at this stage.
7. The holder and any person issued with an environmental authorisation- - must at all times give effect to the general objectives of integrated environmental management laid down in section 23; - must consider, investigate, assess and communicate the impact of his or her prospecting or mining on the environment; - must manage all environmental impacts - in accordance with his or her approved environmental management programme, where appropriate; and - as an integral part of the prospecting or mining, exploration or production operation, unless the Minister responsible for mineral resources directs otherwise; - must monitor and audit compliance with the requirements of the environmental management programme; - must, as far as is reasonably practicable, rehabilitate the environment affected by the prospecting or mining operations to its natural or predetermined state or to a land use which conforms to the generally accepted principle of sustainable development; and - is responsible for any environmental damage, pollution, pumping and treatment of polluted or extraneous water or ecological degradation as a result of his or her operations to which such right, permit or environmental authorisation relates.	Throughout the EMPr
8. Notwithstanding the Companies Act, 2008 (Act No. 71 of 2008), or the Close Corporations Act, 1984 (Act No. 69 of 1984), the directors of a company or	Section 1.7 details the responsibility of the Project Applicant.

Requirements of Section 24N of NEMA	Reference in this EMPr?
members of a close corporation are jointly and severally liable for any negative impact on the environment, whether advertently or inadvertently caused by the company or close corporation which they represent, including damage, degradation or pollution.	

Table 3: Compliance with Appendix 4 of the 2014 NEMA EIA Regulations (as amended on 7 April 2017)

Requirement	Description
Details of the EAP who prepared the EMPr; and; The expertise of the EAP to prepare an EMPr, including a curriculum vitae.	This EMPr was prepared by Dale Holder of Cape EAPrac who has more than 16 years' experience as an Environmental Assessment Practitioner. The CV of the EAP is attached in appendix I.
A detailed description of the aspects of the activity that are covered by the EMPr as identified by the project description.	This EMP covers all aspects of the project as currently Proposed for Roan 2 PV • PV modules and mounting structures; • Inverters and transformers; • Cabling; • Battery Energy Storage System (BESS); • Site and internal access roads (up to 8 m wide); • Auxiliary buildings (33 kV switch room, gatehouse and security, control centre, office, warehouse, canteen & visitors centre, staff lockers etc.); • Perimeter fencing and security infrastructure; • Rainwater tanks; • Temporary and permanent laydown areas; Facility substation. • Own-build grid connection solution, including on site substation:
A map at an appropriate scale which superimposes the proposed activity, its associated structures, and infrastructure on the environmental sensitivities of the preferred site, indicating any areas that should be avoided, including buffers	The Site Development Plan attached in Appendix A, includes the sensitive features identified by participating specialists and indicates how these have been incorporated. The "exclusion areas" identified on this SDP as well as all areas outside of the perimeter fencing of the facility are considered as no go areas for construction activities.
A description of the impact management objectives, including management statements, identifying the impacts and risks that need to be avoided, managed and mitigated as identified through the environmental impact assessment process for all the phases of the development including – (vi) Planning and design; (vii) Pre-construction activities; (viii) Construction activities; (ix) Rehabilitation of the environment after construction and where applicable post closure; and (x) Where relevant, operation activities.	Sections 1.3
A description and identification of impact management outcomes required for the aspects contemplated above.	Sections 4 -11
A description of the proposed impact management actions, identifying the way the impact management objectives and outcomes contemplated above will be achieved and must, where applicable include actions to –	Sections 4 - 11

Requirement	Description
(v) Avoid, modify, remedy control or stop any action, activity or process which causes pollution or environmental degradation; (vi) Comply with any prescribed environmental management standards or practises; (vii) Comply with any applicable provisions of the Act regarding closure, where applicable; and (viii) Comply with any provisions of the Act regarding financial provisions for rehabilitation, where applicable.	
The method of monitoring the implantation of the impact management actions contemplated above.	Sections 4 – 11 and section 14
The frequency of monitoring the implementation of the impact management actions contemplated above.	Sections 4 – 11 and section 14
An indication of the persons who will be responsible for the implementation of the impact management actions.	Sections 4 – 11
The time periods within which the impact management actions must be implemented.	Sections 4 – 11 and section 14
The mechanism for monitoring compliance with the impact management actions.	Section 2 and 4-11
A program for reporting on compliance, considering the requirements as prescribed in the Regulations.	Section 2
An environmental awareness plan describing the way – (iii) The applicant intends to inform his or her employees of any environmental risk which may result from their work; and (iv) Risks must be dealt with to avoid pollution or the degradation of the environment.	Section 5.2
Any specific information that may be required by the competent authority.	None.

Other than the Section 24N and Appendix 4 requirements detailed in the table above, the applicable legislation remains the same as what was considered in the Basic Assessment Report for the Roan 2 PV and as such, it is not re-described in this EMPr.

4. PRE-CONSTRUCTION PHASE– IMPACT MANAGEMENT OUTCOMES & ACTIONS

This section provides details on the pre-construction phase impact management outcomes and actions[7] that are commonly applicable to the development of a PV Energy Facility and its associated infrastructure as well as management actions outlined by participating specialists, preceding environmental process and those contained in the EA for the facility.

Each subsection includes an aspect identified for the development of the PV Energy Facility, and for each aspect a set of prescribed impact management outcomes and associated impact management actions have been identified.

The holder of the EA is ultimately responsible to ensure the implementation of these outcomes and actions.

4.1 PRE-CONSTRUCTION EA CONDITIONS.

The Environmental Authorisation for this development will require a number of administrative requirements that need to take place prior to commencement of construction. These must be included in the EMPr once the EA in respect of this activity is received.

4.2 APPOINTMENT OF ENVIRONMENTAL CONTROL OFFICER AND ENVIRONMENTAL SITE AGENT

The holder of the EA must appoint an independent Environmental Control Officer (ECO) for the construction phase of the Development.

Impact management outcome: Independent party to ensure that the mitigation/rehabilitation. measures and recommendations referred to in the EA are implemented and reported on and to ensure compliance with the provisions of the approved EMPr.						
Impact Management Actions	**Responsible person**	**Method of implementation**	**Timeframe for implementation**	**Responsible party for monitoring**	**Frequency of monitoring**	**Evidence of compliance**
• The ECO must be appointed prior to the commencement of any physical activities. • The ECO will be responsible for monitoring, reviewing and verifying compliance by the EPC Contractor with the environmental specifications of this EMPr and the conditions of the EA.	Holder of the EA	The holder of the EA to appoint independent ECO and ensure that ECO is suitably qualified and experienced.	ECO to be appointed prior to construction	ECO will undertake physical monitoring.	Monthly	The name and contact details of the appointed ECO to be submitted to the Director: Compliance

[7] All Environmental Management Actions allocated to the EPC contractor will apply equally to all sub-contractors responsible for any specific task.

• The appointed ECO must be independent of the EPC contractor and must be suitably qualified and have experience of environmental monitoring and control on similar scale projects. • The main responsibilities of the ECO include but are not limited to the following: - Facilitate the pre-construction environmental compliance workshop; - Review of documentation supplied by the ESA; - Be fully knowledgeable of all the licences and permits issued to the site - Review, maintenance and update of the EMPr; - Liaison between the Project Proponent, Contractors, Authorities and other lead stakeholders on all environmental concerns, including the implementation of the EMPr; - Compilation of monthly Environmental Control Report/s (ECR) to ensure compliance with the EMPr and authorisations. Reports should be submitted to the relevant authority on a monthly basis; - Monitor compliance with this EMPr; - Monitor compliance with the EA; - Monitor implementation of the mitigation and rehabilitation measures and recommendations referred to in the EA, preceding environmental assessment, participating specialists and this EMPr. - Recommend the issuing site instructions to the EPC contractor for corrective actions required; - ECO site inspections should be undertaken at least once a month to ensure compliance with the EMPr. The duration of these visits may be increased or decreased at the discretion of the ECO in consultation with the holder of the EA. The Environmental Site Agent as described below should be on site daily and be in communication with the ECO on a daily basis; - Attendance of regular contractors' site meetings; - Maintain a record of environmental incidents (e.g., spills, impacts, legal transgressions etc.) as well as corrective and preventative measures taken. - Maintain public complaints register in which all complaints and action taken / responses must be recorded. - Keep Record of all activities on site, problems identified, transgressions noted, and a task schedule of tasks undertaken by the ECO; and • The holder of the EA, on advice from the ECO, has the authority to stop work on site if he / she consider that any actions of excessive non-compliance of the EMPr, authorisations or General Duty of Care are taking place. • The ECO must remain employed until all rehabilitation measures are completed.						Monitoring at DFFE. ECO to submit monthly Environmental Control Report to the Director: Compliance Monitoring at DFFE.

In addition to the ECO, this EMPr requires the appointment of a Environmental Site Agent (ESA) for the duration of the construction period of the project (this ESA must be appointed in the pre-construction phase, prior to the commencement of construction activities). The ESA need not be independent and can be appointed by the EPC.

Impact management outcome: To ensure independent full time environmental expertise on site to monitor and report on compliance

Impact Management Actions	Responsible person	Method of implementation	Timeframe for implementation	Responsible party for monitoring	Frequency of monitoring	Evidence of compliance
• The ESA must be appointed prior to the commencement of any physical activities. • The ESA will be responsible for daily monitoring, reviewing and verifying compliance by the EPC Contractor with the environmental specifications of this EMPr and the conditions of the EA. • The appointed ESA must be suitably qualified and have experience of environmental monitoring and control. • The main responsibilities of the ESA include but are not limited to the following: - To ensure compliance with the EMPr and EA; - The ESA is required to be on site daily, which may be reviewed by the ECO and holder of the EA as construction requirements dictate; - Undertaking environmental induction of all staff; - Attending all on site construction meetings (including, but not limited to, technical and progress meetings); - Providing the ECO with a weekly environmental checklist; - Developing and maintaining a detailed photographic site record throughout the construction phase of the project; - Maintaining file records of all method statements provided by the contractors; - Management and ensuring timeous and effective rehabilitation of the site; - Maintain a record of environmental incidents (e.g., spills, impacts, legal transgressions etc.) as well as corrective and preventative measures taken. This information must also be included in the weekly reports; - Maintain public complaints register in which all complaints and action taken / responses must be recorded.	EPC Contractor	The EPC contractor to appoint independent ESA and ensure that ESA is suitably qualified and experienced.	ESA to be appointed prior to construction	ESA will undertake physical monitoring.	The ESA to monitor site daily and provide a formal report back weekly.	The name and contact details of the appointed ESA to be submitted to the Director: Compliance Monitoring at DFFE. Weekly Environmental Checklists to be provided to the EPC and the ECO.

Impact Management Actions	Responsible person	Method of implementation	Timeframe for implementation	Responsible party for monitoring	Frequency of monitoring	Evidence of compliance
- If the ESA observes non-compliance that requires a "stop work" order, the ECO must immediately be informed and will request the holder of the EA to issue such an order if necessary. • The ESA must remain employed until all rehabilitation measures are completed.						

The ECO must have a minimum of a tertiary level qualification in the natural sciences field, as well as at least 8 years' experience and proven competency as an ECO, with extensive experience on similar scale Developments.

The ESA must have a minimum of a tertiary level qualification, as well as at least 1 years' experience on similar scale developments and proven competency as an ECO.

4.3 PRE-CONSTRUCTION ENVIRONMENTAL COMPLIANCE WORKSHOP

It is a required action that a pre-construction environmental compliance workshop be undertaken before any construction commences on site.

Impact management outcome: To ensure that all senior contract staff members have an in-depth knowledge of the environmental requirements for the site in terms of the EA and EMPr.

Impact Management Actions	Responsible person	Method of implementation	Timeframe for implementation	Responsible party for monitoring	Frequency of monitoring	Evidence of compliance
• It is a required action that a pre-construction environmental compliance workshop be undertaken before any construction commences on site. This workshop can be combined with a site handover meeting but must take place before any activities take place on site and before any plant is moved onto site.	Holder of the EA	The holder of the EA must arrange the invites to the workshop. ECO to present the workshop	Prior to commencement of construction.	ECO	Once off.	ECO to issue minutes of the workshop, to be included in first monthly environmental control report.

Impact Management Actions	Responsible person	Method of implementation	Timeframe for implementation	Responsible party for monitoring	Frequency of monitoring	Evidence of compliance
• The purpose of this workshop is to ensure that all relevant senior personnel are familiar with the provisions of the EMPr, as well as the conditions of the EA. • The following people must be present at this Environmental Compliance Workshop: - The holder of the EA; - The ECO; - The EPC Contractor (including contract manager, site agent and foreman); - The sub-EPC contractor if appointed - The Electrical Contractor (including contract manager, site agent and foreman); - The Consulting Engineers (electrical, civil and structural, whichever applicable); and - Project and Asset Management. • Provision should be made in contract and tender documentation to attend a 6-hour workshop that will be chaired by the ECO. • Due to covid regulations and concerns, this workshop may take place on a virtual platform or on site.						

4.4 PRE-CONSTRUCTION ECOLOGICAL REQUIREMENTS

It is required that, a pre-construction survey of the final development footprint must be conducted to ascertain the identity and exact numbers of individuals of protected species affected by the proposed development. A copy of this ecological walkthrough report is attached in Appendix L. No clearing of vegetation may take place until such time as all required permits in terms of both the provincial and national legislation are in place.

A single integrated permit, which covers nationally or provincially listed plant species permitting requirements, as well as meets TOPS regulations, must be obtained from the Cape Nature prior to the any plant rescue / transplant and/or removal activities. A licence for the removal of species protected in terms of the National Forest Act may also required.

The ESA should be present for the site preparation and initial clearing activities to ensure the correct demarcation of no-go areas and supervise any flora relocation and faunal rescue activities that may need to take place during the site clearing.

4.5 WATER CONSERVATION.

It is important that the proposed water conservation infrastructure for both the construction as well as operational phases is considered at the pre-construction phase prior to any procurement taking place.

Impact management outcome: To ensure design criteria promotes sustainable resource use.

Impact Management Actions	Responsible person	Method of implementation	Timeframe for implementation	Responsible party for monitoring	Frequency of monitoring	Evidence of compliance
All buildings should be fitted with rainwater collection and storage systems to supply water to the taps and toilets in these buildings, as well as any outdoor requirements (landscaping, washing etc). All toilets (excluding temporary toilets) should be fitted with dual flush systems[8]. All taps to be installed in the control / substation / workshop buildings must be fitted with low-flow faucets.[9]. The design of any temporary water reservoirs for construction water should have the smallest practically possible surface area to reduce evaporation. Under no circumstances will the discharge of treated water, wastewater or effluent be allowed.	Holder of the EA	The design engineers must consider all relevant resource conservation measures in the design phase of the development	Prior to commencement of construction.	ECO / ESA	During and on completion of all associated building infrastructure on site.	Monthly ECO Report.

4.6 AVIFAUNAL MANAGEMENT

To reduce impact on the Avifaunal Component of the site, the following management actions take place during the pre-construction phase of the development.

- [8] Conservative estimates have shown that a saving of more than 22 000 litres per household (this could apply to the workshops that are occupied by day and night staff) can be achieved annually with the installation of dual flush toilets (Aquanotion, 2008).
- [9] Low flow faucets use aerators to reduce the flow of the water. These can either be built into the faucet or added as an aftermarket product. The faucets in bathrooms should have a peak flow of less than 10 litres per minute.

Impact	Mitigation/Management Objectives and Outcomes	Mitigation/Management Actions	Monitoring		
			Methodology	*Frequency*	*Responsibility*
Avifauna: Entrapment					
Entrapment of medium and large terrestrial birds between the perimeter fences, leading to mortality.	Prevent mortality of avifauna	A single perimeter fence should be used[10]. No electrified wires should be within 300m of the ground. Protect remaining habitat within the farm portion.	Design the facility with a single perimeter fence or with two fences at least 4 metres apart.	Once-off during the planning phase.	Project Developer

5. CONSTRUCTION PHASE – IMPACT MANAGEMENT OUTCOMES AND ACTIONS

This section provides details on the construction phase impact management outcomes and actions[11] that are commonly applicable to the development of a PV Energy Facility and its associated infrastructure as well as management actions outlined by participating specialists, EAP and those contained in the EA for the facility.

Each subsection includes an aspect identified for the development of a PV Energy Facility, and for each aspect a set of prescribed impact management outcomes and associated impact management actions have been identified.

The holder of the EA is ultimately responsible to ensure the implementation of these outcomes and actions.

The signed method statements prepared by the EPC contractor to achieve these environmental management outcomes must be appended to this EMPr as Appendix N[12] and kept on record in the EMPr file.

5.1 CONSTRUCTION PHASING

- [10] A fence consisting of an outer diamond mesh fence and inner electric fence with a separation distance of approximately 100mm would not pose any risk of entrapment for large terrestrial species and can be considered a single fence.
- [11] All Environmental Management Actions allocated to the EPC contractor will apply equally to all sub-contractors responsible for any specific task.
- [12] Method statements only to be appended once they are approved by the ECO.

There are a number of important aspects of the construction phasing that must be implemented to ensure that the potential impact on the environment is kept to a minimum. The EPC contractor must implement the following requirements regarding phasing, when developing the construction programme. This construction programme must be approved by the by the holder of the EA with input from the ECO.

- The main access road, perimeter fence and internal road network to access the panel arrays should be established first and then all vehicular movement must be restricted to within this road network - This will minimise the impact of construction traffic on the undeveloped portion of the property. The only vehicles allowed to move off this road network are those needed to install the PV Mounting structures (i.e., Drills and Piling machines).
- Sites that will be temporarily disturbed by the construction activities (i.e., Temporary access, material loading, temporary storage, turning circles, etc.) must also be included in the road access network.

5.2 ENVIRONMENTAL AWARENESS AND TRAINING

It is a required action that the ESA, in consultation with the EPC, shall ensure that all construction workers receive an induction presentation, as well as on-going environmental education and awareness, on the importance and implications of the EMPr, EA and the environmental requirements they prescribe.

The ESA must keep records of all environmental training sessions, including names, dates and the information presented. Details of the environmental induction are also to be included in the weekly environmental checklists and monthly environmental control reports.

Impact management outcome: All onsite staff are aware and understand the individual responsibilities in terms of this EMPr.

Impact Management Actions	Responsible person	Method of implementation	Timeframe for implementation	Responsible party for monitoring	Frequency of monitoring	Evidence of compliance
• All staff must receive environmental induction training prior to undertaking any activities on site; • The EPC contractor must provide 24h notice to the ESA to arrange a suitable time for the ESA to present the induction training; • Refresher environmental awareness training is available as and when required; • All staff are aware of the conditions and controls linked to the EA and within the EMPr and made aware of their individual roles and responsibilities in achieving compliance with the EA and EMPr;	EPC Contractor and ESA	ESA to present a pre-prepared environmental induction to all staff prior to them undertaking any activities on site. EPC to ensure that all environmental awareness posters	Throughout construction period	ESA	Weekly as part of the weekly environmental checklist.	Signed environmental induction attendance registers to be appended to weekly environmental checklist and monthly

Impact Management Actions	Responsible person	Method of implementation	Timeframe for implementation	Responsible party for monitoring	Frequency of monitoring	Evidence of compliance
• The EPC contractor must erect and maintain information posters at key locations on site, and the posters must include the following information as a minimum: - Safety notifications; - Faunal Occurrences and risks; - Photographic plates of all listed and protected flora: - Hydrocarbon Spill management and correction and - Waste Management. • Environmental awareness training must include as a minimum the following: - Description of significant environmental impacts, actual or potential, related to their work activities; - Mitigation measures to be implemented when carrying out specific activities; - Environmental emergency preparedness and response procedures; - No Go Areas - Procedures to be followed when working near or within sensitive areas; - Wastewater management procedures; - Water usage and conservation; - Solid waste management procedures; - Sanitation procedures; - Fire prevention; - Faunal conflicts and - Vegetation management and protected & listed flora. • The EPC contractor must provide translation services to Ensure that the environmental induction be translated into the relevant languages.		are in place at a minimum of 2 locations on site and that these posters are maintained. ESA to attend toolbox talks at least once a week, where an environmental topic is presented (this topic should be linked to current environmental concerns on the site at that stage)				environmental control report.

5.3 DEMARCATION OF NO-GO AREAS

It is required that all areas outside of the physical development footprint are to be demarcated as no-no go areas and access to these areas restricted. All construction activities must be restricted to demarcated areas to restrict the impact on sensitive environmental features. The impact management actions detailed below will help in achieving this end.

Impact management outcome: To ensure the protection of all the natural areas, sensitive features and buffer areas outside of the physical development footprint

Impact Management Actions	Responsible person	Method of implementation	Timeframe for implementation	Responsible party for monitoring	Frequency of monitoring	Evidence of compliance
• The exact footprint of the construction area, including panel foundations and all roads (including access, haul and internal roads which must make use of the final road layout) and infrastructure are to be surveyed and pegged before any physical construction commences on site. • To ensure effective demarcation of no-go areas, the construction of the perimeter fence should be the first activity that takes place on site. • All sensitive features as identified by specialists or ECO within the footprint must be demarcated for exclusion. • Appropriate signage is to be placed at all No-Go Areas • The contractor, in conjunction with the ECO and ESA, must walk the areas determined and mark the full extent of the area to be disturbed (allowing sufficient space for the construction activity); • All areas beyond these demarcated areas are considered as "no-go" areas; • Construction staff must be briefed as part of the environmental induction on the requirements regarding the no-go areas; and • Any protected trees or plants that are to remain within the development footprint are to be physically demarcated.	EPC Contractor	The EPC contractor to ensure that all no-go demarcations are in place and maintained for the duration of the contract. The ESA to ensure that compliance with the no-go policy forms part of the environmental induction. ESA to monitor compliance with no-go areas.	Survey and pegging to commencement of construction. Formal perimeter fence to be constructed in parallel to site establishment	ESA / ECO	ESA to monitor Daily. ECO to monitor Monthly.	Weekly environmental checklists. Monthly environmental control reports.

5.4 ESTABLISHMENT OF CONTRACTORS SITE CAMP AND TEMPORARY LAYDOWN AREA.

No temporary site camps are allowed outside of the development footprint.

The position of the contractors site camp and temporary laydown area must as be shown in the approved site layout plan. It must be noted that the contractors site camp and laydown area are temporary areas for use during the duration of construction. These areas must be rehabilitated on completion of construction as detailed in section 5.20 below. A permanent laydown area not exceeding 1 Hectare may remain for the duration of the operational phase of the project.

Impact management outcome: To ensure that the high impact activities that typically take place in a contractor's site camp / laydown area are restricted to a predefined area that does not contain any sensitive features and is rehabilitated on completion of construction.

Impact Management Actions	Responsible person	Method of implementation	Timeframe for implementation	Responsible party for monitoring	Frequency of monitoring	Evidence of compliance
• The Contractors Site Camp and Temporary Laydown must be situated within the development area in the position identified in the approved Site Layout Plan • No temporary site camps will be allowed outside of the development footprint; • Any necessary plant rescue within the site camp and temporary laydown must be undertaken prior to the stripping of topsoil. • Topsoil from the site camp and temporary area must be stripped and stockpiled for re-use during rehabilitation. This must be done prior to levelling and placement of gravel; • The site camp must be suitably fenced off; • All construction material must be stored in the site camp, unless otherwise approved by the ECO. This may exclude PV panel mounting structures and panel components which will be stored at each installation point, as per the manufacturer plans; • No personnel may overnight in the site camp, except in the case of security personnel; • Fires for cooking and/or heating are only allowed within the site camp after consultation with the Health and Safety Representative; • Fuel and other chemicals may only be stored in the camp site; • Storage of waste and waste management must take place within the site camp and must be removed on a regular basis. • Temporary waste pick up points in the field must be moved to the site camp on a daily basis; • The site camp must be provided with sufficient ablution facilities (chemical toilets and potable water) of which the content must be disposed of regularly and at the suitable facilities.;	EPC Contractor	The EPC contractor to provide method statement for site camp and temporary laydown establishment. The ESA and ECO to monitor compliance with site camp and laydown requirements. ECO to sign off on final rehabilitation of the site camp and temporary laydown area.	Site camp to be established prior to delivery of materials and plant (with the exception of plant and material required for the establishment of the perimeter fence)	ESA / ECO	ESA to monitor Daily. ECO to monitor Monthly.	Weekly environmental checklists. Monthly environmental control reports.

Impact Management Actions	Responsible person	Method of implementation	Timeframe for implementation	Responsible party for monitoring	Frequency of monitoring	Evidence of compliance
• Any security lighting must be restricted to the Site Camp and Laydown area and no security lighting may be placed in the field; • Lighting during both the construction as well as operational phase of the development must be a low-pressure sodium or Led type, preferably yellow or warm white; • All security lighting should be attached to motion sensers and be dark sky friendly[13]; and • On completion of construction, the site camp and temporary laydown area must be rehabilitated as directed.						

5.5 MANAGEMENT OF TOPSOIL

Topsoil from all excavations and construction activities must be salvaged and reapplied during reclamation.

In terms of best practice and for rehabilitation purposes, it is essential that at least 300mm layer of topsoil from the building and road footprints (i.e., the on-site substation, auxiliary buildings, contractor's site camp and temporary laydown area) be stripped and stockpiled prior to the commencement of construction activities in each area. Topsoil should not be stripped from the development footprint below the solar arrays except where trenching for cabling is required (in which case topsoil should be placed on the opposite side of the trench from the subsoils and placed back in the same trench when cables are covered up).

Impact management outcome: To ensure that the handling of topsoil does not result in the pollution or loss of the resource.

[13] In order to achieve this, all lighting should only be on when needed, only light the area that needs it, be no brighter than necessary, minimize blue light emissions and be fully shielded (pointing downward).

Impact Management Actions	Responsible person	Method of implementation	Timeframe for implementation	Responsible party for monitoring	Frequency of monitoring	Evidence of compliance
• The EPC must ensure sufficient topsoil is reclaimed to provide for rehabilitation of temporary disturbed areas as well as for long term storage for rehabilitation post operations. • A minimum 300mm layer of topsoil must be stripped from the access, internal and perimeter roads, on-site substation, auxiliary buildings, contractors site camp and temporary laydown area; • The topsoil stockpile sites must be approved by the ECO and may not be within any sensitive areas as defined by the ECO; • Topsoil stockpiles may not obstruct natural water pathways and drainage channels. • The topsoil may not be stockpiled within any of the remaining natural areas (i.e., any open spaces between modules). An existing disturbed area within or adjacent to the laydown areas should rather be chosen for this purpose; • The topsoil stockpiles must be protected from erosion and dust as indicated by the ECO and this EMPr; • The topsoil stockpiles must be clearly demarcated to avoid contamination; • No topsoil may be mixed with subsoil; • No topsoil may be used as bedding material for cable trenches; • Topsoil stockpiles must not exceed 2m in height and stockpiles older than 6 months must be enriched before they are re-used. • The topsoil must be replaced into disturbed areas (road verges, cable trenches and contractors site camp) on completion of construction;	EPC Contractor	The EPC contractor to provide method statement for topsoil management. The ESA and ECO to advise on the placement of topsoil stockpiles. The ESA and ECO to monitor compliance. ECO to sign off on final rehabilitation of the site camp and temporary laydown area.	Prior to construction activities in each specific area.	ESA / ECO	ESA to monitor Daily. ECO to monitor Monthly.	Weekly environmental checklists. Monthly environmental control reports.

5.6 WATER SUPPLY

This section is specific to water supply during the construction phase. Water supply for the washing of panels is discussed under the operational phase requirements.

Impact management outcome: To ensure water used during construction is lawfully and sustainably utilised.

Impact Management Actions	Responsible person	Method of implementation	Timeframe for implementation	Responsible party for monitoring	Frequency of monitoring	Evidence of compliance
• The EPC contractor must ensure that all water sources utilised are lawful. • The EPC Contractor must ensure a supply of water is available on site for sanitation, drinking, dust suppression and all construction activities. • The EPC Contractor must ensure that water supplied for drinking water is of potable standards. • Water used for dust suppression on gravel roads must be of a quality compliant with the General Special Effluent Standards (31/03/2009): Temperature: max.25ºC, pH: between 5.5 & 7.5 and conductivity: not be increased more than 15% above the intake water & not exceed 250 milli-Siemens per metre (determined at 25ºC). • No chemically treated or wastewater may be used for dust suppression. • Should any temporary water storage reservoirs need to be constructed for the purposes of construction, these must be positioned within the footprint of the development in a position agreed to with the ECO. Sufficient mechanisms to prevent fauna entrapment must be implemented to the satisfaction of the ECO. • Carry out Environmental Awareness Training with a discussion on water usage and conservation – This should form part of the Environmental Induction of all construction staff. • The EPC contractor must maintain records of all water usage (via metering and / or water tuck logs) for the duration of the construction phase.	EPC Contractor	The EPC contractor to provide method statement for Water Supply. The EPC Contractor must supply records of tests undertaken on drinking water to show that it is within potable standards (these tests should be done on a three-monthly basis or anytime the water source changes) The EPC to measure (internally) PH, TDS and Conductivity of all water sources on a weekly basis.	Lawfulness and quality testing need to take place prior to construction. Remaining actions applicable for the duration of the construction phase.	EPC Contractor to provide initial and 3 monthly quality test results to ESA. EPC Contractor to supply weekly tests to ESA. Water usage records to be provided by EPC contractor on a weekly basis. ESA / ECO to review results and provide recommendations.	3 Monthly for Potability tests. Weekly for internal testing	Weekly environmental checklists. Monthly environmental control reports.

5.7 VEGETATION CLEARING

The objective of mitigation for any development is to firstly avoid and minimise impacts on vegetation where possible and where these cannot be completely avoided, to compensate for the negative impacts of the development on vegetation and faunal habitats, and to maximise re-vegetation and rehabilitation of disturbed areas. This section deals with the management of impacts associated with the clearing of vegetation. Please refer to the section below for details regarding the rehabilitation and restoration of affected areas after completion of the construction activities.

Some loss of vegetation is an inevitable consequence of the construction of PV facilities, and vegetation clearing required for the laydown area, roads, buildings etc. could impact listed plant species, as well as high-biodiversity plant communities. Vegetation clearing will also lead to habitat loss for fauna and potentially the loss of sensitive faunal species, habitats and ecosystems.

The environmental impact management actions detailed in this section as well as those in the previous section on demarcation of no-go areas will help achieve this end.

It must be noted that no vegetation clearing may occur until such time as permits for the removal of provincially protected species as well as species protected in terms of the National Forest Act are in place.

Impact management outcome: To ensure that vegetation is lawful, minimised and restricted to the development footprint.

Impact Management Actions	Responsible person	Method of implementation	Timeframe for implementation	Responsible party for monitoring	Frequency of monitoring	Evidence of compliance
• Vegetation clearing can only commence once: - All necessary permits are in place, - Plant Rescue has been undertaken, - Development footprint has been Demarcated • Vegetation clearing must be kept to a minimum and restricted to the following areas: - Internal Road Network, - Perimeter Road, - Inverter / Transformer Stations, - Laydown Area, - Site Camp and - Building Footprints	EPC Contractor	The EPC contractor to provide method statement for vegetation clearing activities.	Throughout the duration of construction.	ESA / ECO	Daily	Weekly environmental checklists. Monthly environmental control reports.

Impact Management Actions	Responsible person	Method of implementation	Timeframe for implementation	Responsible party for monitoring	Frequency of monitoring	Evidence of compliance
• For the PV Array, the underlying grass/ sedge layer should be left intact (albeit trampled by construction activities) and only the larger woody plants cleared or trimmed. • All areas to be cleared should be clearly demarcated, prior to the commencement of clearing activities; • Vegetation cleared / removed as part of the site clearing activities must be stockpiled for use during the re-vegetation and rehabilitation stage for brush-packing. The location of the vegetation stockpile can be in the same area as the topsoil stockpile, as designated in consultation with the ECO; • Only those individuals of protected plant species directly within the development footprint should be cleared. Those which can be safely left intact (e.g., below or between the solar panel arrays) must not be disturbed; • Any vegetation clearing that needs to take place as part of maintenance activities (during construction and operation phases) should be done in an environmentally friendly manner, using the most effective methodology suited to the target species (herbicides and/or manual clearing).						

5.8 TRENCHING AND CABLING

Electric cables required to connect the inverters to the on-site switching station (i.e., AC cables) within the boundaries of the development must be installed underground, within or parallel to the internal road network and/or paths between the panel rows, as far as possible. Preference should be given to mounting the DC cabling to the panel arrays, although it is understood that there will also be limited trenching associated with the DC cabling.

Cable trench excavation, cable laying and backfill must be carried out in a systematic and continuous operation, minimising the length of trench open at any one time in order to reduce the risk of runoff or faunal entrapment. Cable trenches must be backfilled in such a manner as to prevent the trench from acting as a ditch or a conduit for water flow.

Impact management outcome: To ensure that trenching activities are spatially restricted and do not result in loss or contamination of topsoil resources.

Impact Management Actions	Responsible person	Method of implementation	Timeframe for implementation	Responsible party for monitoring	Frequency of monitoring	Evidence of compliance
• Trenching shall be kept to a minimum through the use of single trenches for multiple service provision (including communication cabling and AC cabling in the same trenches); • Open trenches to be closed as quickly as possible to prevent faunal entrapment and erosion; • The planning and selection should be done in approximation to the SDP and cognisance shall be given to minimising the potential for soil erosion; • Trench routes with permitted working areas shall be clearly defined and marked with prior to excavation; • The stripping and separation of topsoil and subsoil shall occur on separate sides of the excavated trench and replaced in the same order (i.e., topsoil on top); • Trench lengths shall be kept as short as practically possible before backfilling and compacting; • The ECO may require the planting of additional indigenous vegetation along trench routes in order to speed up rehabilitation (particularly in areas that may be prone to erosion); • Open trenches must be inspected daily for faunal entrapment (small mammals and reptiles), which are to be removed before backfilling of the trenches; • Trenches shall be backfilled to the same level as (or slightly higher to allow for settlement) the surrounding land surface to minimise erosion. Excess soil shall be stockpiled in an area designated by the ECO. • Topsoil may not be used for bedding or blanket material in trenches.	EPC Contractor	The EPC contractor to provide method statement trenching activities.	Throughout the construction phase	ESA and ECO	Daily	Weekly environmental checklists. Monthly environmental control reports.

5.9 DRILLING AND RAMMING OPERATIONS

It is envisioned that drilling and ramming will be the preferred method of installing the panel support structures / sub-structures. The following actions must be implemented in this regard.

Impact management outcome: To ensure that installation of the sub-structures do not cause pollution or undue mechanical damage to the environment.

Impact Management Actions	Responsible person	Method of implementation	Timeframe for implementation	Responsible party for monitoring	Frequency of monitoring	Evidence of compliance
• The plant required for the installation of the sub-structures (i.e., the trackers and module mounting structures) is the only plant that is allowed to leave the internal road network. The contractor shall submit a method statement detailing his proposals to prevent pollution (from hydraulic fluids, fuel or oil leaks) during ramming operations. This shall be approved by the Employers Representative and the ECO prior to the onset of any ramming operations; • The contractor shall take all reasonable measures to limit dust generation as a result of drilling and ramming operations (also see section below addressing management of dust); • Noise and dust nuisances shall comply with the applicable standards according to the Occupational Health and Safety (Act No. 85 of 1993) as well as the dust control regulations; • Other than the known acceptable impact from trampling, any areas damaged by the ramming and associated activities shall be rehabilitated by the contractor to the satisfaction of the ECO.	EPC Contractor	The EPC contractor to provide method statement drilling and ramming operations.	Throughout the construction phase	ESA and ECO	Daily	Weekly environmental checklists. Monthly environmental control reports.

5.10 FENCING

During construction it will be necessary to fence in the Contractor's Site Camp (to avoid theft of construction equipment and materials) and the PV Laydown Area/s (to avoid theft of the solar panels and associated infrastructure). This temporary fencing will be restricted to these areas and be removed at the end of the construction phase. The total footprint of the facility will be fenced with a permanent perimeter electrified fence to protect the operational assets.

Electric fencing should not have any strands within 30cm of the ground (to allow for the movement of small mammals and reptiles).

Impact management outcome: To ensure that fencing protects project assets and the environment while limiting impact on faunal passages.

Impact Management Actions	Responsible person	Method of implementation	Timeframe for implementation	Responsible party for monitoring	Frequency of monitoring	Evidence of compliance
• The establishment of the perimeter fence should be the first activity that takes place on site, as this serves to demarcate the total disturbance footprint. • Any sensitive features within the project footprint should be temporarily fenced prior to commencement of construction (refer to above section on the demarcation of no-go areas). This temporary fencing must be replaced with permanent fencing prior to the completion of the construction phase. • Temporary storage ponds and topsoil stockpile should be temporarily fenced. • The perimeter security fencing should be constructed in a manner which allows for the passage of small and medium sized mammals, at strategic places, such as areas of dense vegetation • In accordance with the EA, electrified strands should not be within 30cm of the ground. • Only the facility itself should be fenced-off. • Other than the fencing around the site camp / laydown area and operational buildings. No lighting may be placed on the perimeter security fencing. • The final fencing plan should be submitted to the ECO for comments and approval.	EPC Contractor	Implementation of the actions herein. EPC contractor to submit final fencing plan to the ECO for approval.	Throughout the construction phase	ESA and ECO	Daily	Weekly environmental checklists. Monthly environmental control reports.

5.11 CONSTRUCTION VEHICLES AND TRAFFIC MANAGEMENT PLAN

Construction vehicles carrying materials to the site, should avoid using roads through densely populated areas as to not disturb existing retail and commercial operations. It is important that a permit for all abnormal loads be obtained from provincial government.

During the EIA for this project, JG Afrika prepared a traffic impact assessment (Attached to this EMPr). This document with the general management of traffic access in terms of the access to the site and management of abnormal loads etc. The EPC contractor must comply with the management requirements detailed in these documents as well as those below:

Impact management outcome: To minimise the impact on the road network from dust and noise pollution as well as the transport of materials and staff to site.

Impact Management Actions	Responsible person	Method of implementation	Timeframe for implementation	Responsible party for monitoring	Frequency of monitoring	Evidence of compliance
• Stagger component delivery to site • The use of mobile batch plants and quarries near the site would decrease the impact on the surrounding road network • Dust suppression must take place on main access road • Reduce the construction period as far as possible • Maintenance of gravel Roads • Apply for abnormal load permits prior to commencement of delivery via abnormal loads • Assess the preferred route (from port of entry to site) and undertake a 'dry run' to test • Staff and general trips should occur outside of peak traffic periods as far as possible. • Any temporary accesses needed for delivery of large plant and equipment (i.e., plant that cannot pass underneath the MV powerlines entering Manganore Substation must: 1. Be utilised in such a manner as not to trigger any listed activities in terms of the 2014 EIA regulations. 2. Must be done with the permission of the affected landowner. 3. Be fully rehabilitated as outlined in section 5.20 after use.	Holder of the EA and EPC Contractor	Implementation in compliance with the actions defined. Implementation of the measures. Implementation of the measured identified in the TIA's. Regular monitoring of road surface quality. Apply for prior to commencement of construction	Throughout the construction phase	ESA and ECO	At commencement of construction Daily	Weekly environmental checklists. Monthly environmental control reports.

This following section provides additional management actions specifically with regards to management of construction vehicles in respect of bio-physical impacts.

Signs must be placed along construction roads to identify speed limit, travel restriction and other standard traffic control information. Furthermore, all construction vehicles should adhere to a low-speed limit to avoid collisions with susceptible faunal species. The following environmental management actions are required.

Impact management outcome: To ensure that construction traffic does not cause faunal fatalities, nor undue damage to vegetation or pollution of the environment.

Impact Management Actions	Responsible person	Method of implementation	Timeframe for implementation	Responsible party for monitoring	Frequency of monitoring	Evidence of compliance
• The designated access to the site must be established and clearly signposted prior to physical construction commencing on site. • Speed limits for main access road should be set at 50km per hour. • Speed limits for internal roads must be set at 25km per hour. • Speed control signage to be placed at intervals along the access road, at the entrance to the site and at intervals along the internal road network. • Temporary signage to be in place for the construction phase. This signage to be replaced with permanent signage for the operational phase. • Other than vehicles and plant required for the drilling and ramming operations, no vehicles or plant may leave the access, or internal road network (except when within the site camp and laydown area) • Dust control (as described below) must be implemented the full length of the access road and on all main internal haul roads. • Any faunal fatalities because of vehicles and plant must be reported to the ESA within 1 hour of the incident.	EPC Contractor	Implementation in compliance with the actions defined.	Throughout the construction phase	ESA and ECO	Daily	Weekly environmental checklists. Monthly environmental control reports.

5.12 CONSTRUCTION WASTE

An integrated waste management approach must be implemented that is based on waste minimisation and must incorporate reduction, recycling and re-use options where appropriate. Where solid waste is disposed of, such disposal shall only occur at a landfill licenced in terms of section 20(b) of the National Environmental Management Waste Act, 2008 (Act 59 of 2008).

It is proposed that the local municipality will provide services in terms of waste removal and sewage for the construction phase of the proposed project. However, should the municipality not have adequate capacity available for the handling of waste and sewage, then the EPC Contractor must make use of private contractors to ensure that the services are provided. The EPC Contractor must also ensure that adequate waste disposal measures are implemented by obtaining waste disposal dockets / slips of all waste and sewage that is removed from site.

Impact management outcome: To promote an integrated waste[14] management approach and ensure the management of waste during the construction phase is both lawful and sustainable.

Impact Management Actions	Responsible person	Method of implementation	Timeframe for implementation	Responsible party for monitoring	Frequency of monitoring	Evidence of compliance
• All recyclable material (such as module packaging, packaging strips, pallets etc) must be recycled and may not be disposed of as part of the normal waste stream. • A dedicated waste management area should be set up in the contractors site camp / laydown area. This waste management area must as a minimum: - Be clearly demarcated and sign posted - Be wind and scavenger proof; - Include separation of wate streams (Recyclable waste, General Waste, Construction Rubble and Hazardous Waste); - Be maintained in a neat and tidy state with waste regularly removed. • The EPC Contractor must provide the ESA with a Waste Management register / report on a weekly Basis. This register / report must include as a minimum: - Records of all waste volumes for waste stream, - Proof of all volumes of recycling, - Disposal slips for all waste transported to a landfill, - Disposal slips for all hazardous waste, • All hazardous waste (including chemicals, bitumen, fuel, lubricants, oils, contaminated soil from hydrocarbon spills, paints etc.) shall be disposed of at an approved / registered hazardous-waste landfill site. The Contractor shall provide disposal certificates to the ECO. • All Hazardous waste must be temporary stored in sealed waterproof containers and may not be stored on site for longest than 30 days. • Used oil and grease must be removed from site to an approved used oil recycling company.	EPC Contractor	The EPC contractor to provide method statement for waste management.	Throughout the construction phase	ESA and ECO. EPC Contractor to provide records of all waste volumes and disposal slips on a weekly basis.	Daily	Weekly environmental checklists. Monthly environmental control reports.

[14] Waste in this instance excludes excess overburden from excavations.

Impact Management Actions	Responsible person	Method of implementation	Timeframe for implementation	Responsible party for monitoring	Frequency of monitoring	Evidence of compliance
• Under NO circumstances may any waste be spoiled on the site. • Where possible, the routine maintenance of construction plant should take place off-site. Where such maintenance must occur, it must be done in the site camp on an impermeable surface with a sump to collect any oil spills. • Temporary waste receptacles in the field must be removed to the dedicated waste management area before the end of each working day. • Ensure that no waste materials or sediments are left in the surrounding drainage lines (because of the construction). • Wastewater must be collected and disposed of at a suitable licenced disposal facility. Proof of disposal (i.e., waste disposal slips or waybills) should be retained on file for auditing purposes						

5.13 FUEL AND CHEMICAL STORAGE

The above ground storage of fuel is subject to authorisation in terms of the National Environmental Management Act (NEMA EIA regulations) if more than 30m³ is stored on site at any one time. The environmental authorisation for this development does not include authorisation for the storage of more than 30 cubic metres of fuel.

The temporary storage of hazardous or toxic materials / liquids (chemicals, fuels, lubricants and oils) must comply with legislation and the actions in the table below must be implemented.

Impact management outcome: To ensure lawful fuel storage that does not cause soil and water pollution.

Impact Management Actions	Responsible person	Method of implementation	Timeframe for implementation	Responsible party for monitoring	Frequency of monitoring	Evidence of compliance
• Temporary fuel storage must take place within the contractors site camp and laydown area in an area approved by the ECO; • No storage of fuel may take place on any other portion of the site; • All hazardous materials should be stored in the appropriate manner to prevent contamination of the site. Any accidental chemical, fuel and oil spills that occur at the site should be cleaned up immediately in the appropriate manner, as related to the nature of the spill. • Mobile fuel units used to refuel plant on site must make use of drip trays when refuelling; • Storage facilities may not be located within 60m of any freshwater resources where there is a potential for any spilled fuel to enter the resource; • Fuel storage facilities should be located on flat ground. No cut and fill should take place immediately on or adjacent to fuel storage areas; • All storage tanks should be double lined and be ISO 9001 certified; • All storage tanks must be enclosed by bund walls; • Bund walls must be constructed to contain at least 110% of the total capacity of the storage tanks; • Bund walls must be constructed of impermeable material or lined to ensure that petroleum products cannot escape; • A suitable material should be placed in the base of the bund walls to soak up any accidental spillages; • The tanks should be locked and secured when not in use; • Automatic shut-off nozzles are required on all dispensing units; • Storage tanks should be drained within one week of completion of activities (only unused fuel can be used by the contractor on other work sites or returned to the supplier). If the construction program extends over the builder's shutdown, the contractor must ensure that storage tanks are emptied prior to this period; • All storage tanks, containers and related equipment should be regularly maintained to ensure safe storage and dispensing of material. The engineer is to sign off on the condition and integrity of the storage tanks; • Defective hoses, valves and containment structures should be promptly repaired;	EPC Contractor	The EPC contractor to provide method statement for chemical and fuel storage.	Throughout the construction phase	ESA and ECO. EPC Contractor maintain a fuel and chemical register and provide this to the ECO on a monthly basis.	Daily	Weekly environmental checklists. Monthly environmental control reports.

Impact Management Actions	Responsible person	Method of implementation	Timeframe for implementation	Responsible party for monitoring	Frequency of monitoring	Evidence of compliance
• Vehicle and equipment fuelling should be undertaken on a hard impermeable surface, over drip pans or bund walls to ensure spilled fuel or toxic liquids is captured and cleaned up; • The area must be totally rehabilitated on completion of the contract and all contaminated material must be carefully removed and disposed of at a licensed dumping site for that purpose; and • Spill kits must be made available on-site for the clean-up of spills. A minimum of 2 spill kits must be in the contractors site camp. Spill kits must also be available in the field within 500m of any drilling and ramming operations.						

5.14 NOISE MANAGEMENT

Although the proposed development is located outside of an urban area, the following noise management actions are applicable to the construction phase of the development due to its proximity to farm homesteads.

The Contractor shall furthermore be responsible for compliance with the relevant legislation with respect to noise inter alia Section 25 of ECA (73 of 1989) and standards applicable to noise nuisances in the Occupational Health and Safety Act (No. 85 of 1993).

Impact management outcome: To ensure nuisance from noise and vibration does not occur.

Impact Management Actions	Responsible person	Method of implementation	Timeframe for implementation	Responsible party for monitoring	Frequency of monitoring	Evidence of compliance
• It is recommended that noise generation be kept to a minimum and that construction activities be confined to normal working hours (07:00 - 17:00 on Monday to Saturday). Should the Contractor wish to deviate from these work hours, approval must be granted by the Holder of the EA,	EPC Contractor	As per the stated actions	Throughout the construction phase	ESA and ECO	Daily	Weekly environmental checklists.

Impact Management Actions	Responsible person	Method of implementation	Timeframe for implementation	Responsible party for monitoring	Frequency of monitoring	Evidence of compliance
• The following noise reduction actions in respect of plant should be implemented: - Provide baffle and noise screens on noisy machines as necessary; - Provide absorptive linings to the interior of engine compartments; - Ensure machinery is properly maintained (fasten loose panels, replace defective silencers); - Switch off machinery immediately when not in use; and - Reduce impact noise by careful handling.						Monthly environmental control reports.

5.15 CONCRETE MANAGEMENT

Proper concrete management is of utmost importance. Concrete works are likely to be limited to the construction of the on-site sub-station and auxiliary buildings and are not likely to be extensive (the preferred alternative for the panel support structures will make use of a technology that does not require concrete footings, due to rammed piles/earth screws/rock anchors). However, in instances where rammed piles/earth screws or rock anchors will not be practically possible and for other concrete work associated with the substation and inverter stations, the following actions in terms of concrete management should take place.

Cement powder has a high alkaline pH that may contaminate and adversely affect both soil pH and water pH negatively. A rapid change in pH can have consequences on the functioning of soil and water organisms, as well as on the botanical component.

The use of ready-mix trucks delivering concrete directly to site is recommended and mass batching of concrete on site should be limited as far as possible.

Impact management outcome: To ensure that the handling of concrete does not result in pollution of soil or water resources.

Impact Management Actions	Responsible person	Method of implementation	Timeframe for implementation	Responsible party for monitoring	Frequency of monitoring	Evidence of compliance
• Trucks should deliver pre-mixed concrete to the site and pour the concrete directly into the prepared excavations. • When concrete trucks have unloaded, there is a requirement to wash out the inside of the concrete drum. Water can be provided to the trucks for this purpose (at the discretion of the contractor). Concrete suppliers may NOT dispose of this wash water anywhere on site. Trucks should return to their depot for this purpose. • Any spillages of concrete outside of the excavations (including haulage routes) must be cleaned up immediately by the supplier. • Where small batching of concrete or plaster takes place on site, the following actions must be implemented: - Concrete batching may only take place in areas approved by the ECO (preferably in the Site Camp); - Concrete mixing must take place on batching plates unless it is on an area that is to be hard surfaced as part of the development; - Equipment (wheelbarrows, shovels etc) must be washed into a lined settling pond; - Once the settling ponds dry out, the concrete must be removed and dispatched to a suitable disposal site. Ideally, all concrete batching should take place on an area that is to be hard surfaced as part of the development (building floor, road or paved area); • To avoid resource contamination, concrete batching should not be located within 60m of any stormwater management structure. • If an area outside of the site camp is identified for batching it must first be approved by the ECO and all topsoil must be stripped and stockpiled for re-use. • Batching at satellite sites must be done on a batching plate to prevent soil contamination. • Empty cement bags must be treated as hazardous waste and must be treated accordingly. • Cement wash water may not be discharged into the environment.	EPC Contractor	The EPC contractor to provide method statement for all on site concrete batching.	Throughout the construction phase	ESA and ECO	Daily	Weekly environmental checklists. Monthly environmental control reports.

5.16 FIRE MANAGEMENT AND PROTECTION

As required in the veld and fire management act, it is the landowner's responsibility to develop and maintain firebreaks as well as be sufficiently prepared to combat veld fires. This requirement will fall on the lawful user of the land in respect of the PV Development.

The PV development site is arid, with sparse vegetation cover and fires are not a natural phenomenon in the area. However, under exceptional circumstances, such as following years of exceedingly high rainfall, sufficient biomass may build up to carry fires. Therefore, management of plant biomass within the site should be part of the management of the facility. Grazing by livestock is the simplest and most ecologically sound way to manage plant biomass and is recommended the preferred method to manage plant biomass at the site if found to be viable. Alternative management practices can include brush cutting. Utilisation of non-selective herbicides for the management of biomass is prohibited on site.The following environmental impact management actions must be implemented with regards to fire management.

Impact management outcome: To reduce the risk of fire to infrastructure and environment.

Impact Management Actions	Responsible person	Method of implementation	Timeframe for implementation	Responsible party for monitoring	Frequency of monitoring	Evidence of compliance
• Fires should only be allowed within fire-safe demarcated areas (and only within the site camp); • No fuelwood collection is allowed on-site; • The total removal of all invasive alien vegetation should take place to decrease the fire risk – Although there were few invasive plants identified during the environmental process, these may establish to a degree as a result of site disturbance. This must be done in accordance with the Alien Vegetation Management Plan; • Cigarette butts may not be thrown in the veld but must be disposed of correctly. The contractor, must designate smoking areas (in compliance with the Tobacco Products Control Amendment Act 63 of 2008) with suitable receptacles for disposal; • In case of an emergency, the contact details of the local fire and emergency services must be readily available;	EPC Contractor	In compliance with the actions defined as well as requirements detailed in the health and safety plan.	Throughout the construction phase	ESA and ECO	Daily	Weekly environmental checklists. Monthly environmental control reports.

Impact Management Actions	Responsible person	Method of implementation	Timeframe for implementation	Responsible party for monitoring	Frequency of monitoring	Evidence of compliance
• Contractors must ensure that basic firefighting equipment and suitably qualified/experienced personnel are available on site at all times, as per the specifications defined by the health and safety representative / consultant; • The fire risk on site is a point of discussion that must take place as part of the pre-construction compliance workshop and the environmental induction training prior to commencement of construction; • Biomass from the removal of woody vegetation currently present on site should be chipped to reduce its flammability, and • The contractor must also comply with the requirements of the Occupational Health and Safety Act with regards to fire protection.						

5.17 SANITATION

The EPC must provide sanitation facilities within the construction area and along the road so that workers do not pollute the surrounding environment. These facilities must be removed from the site when the construction phase is completed. Associated waste must be disposed of at a registered waste disposal site.

Impact management outcome: To ensure safe and healthy sanitation for construction staff without increasing pollution risk.

Impact Management Actions	Responsible person	Method of implementation	Timeframe for implementation	Responsible party for monitoring	Frequency of monitoring	Evidence of compliance
Portable chemical ablution facilities must be made available for the use by construction staff for the duration of the construction period. The following actions must be implemented in this regard: • Toilet and washing facilities must be available to the site personnel at all times (at the site camp and in the field); • These facilities must be situated away from freshwater resources; • One toilet for every 15 personnel is required;	EPC Contractor	As per the stated actions	Throughout the construction phase	ESA and ECO. The EPC Contractor to supply chemical	Daily	Weekly environmental checklists. Monthly environmental control reports.

Impact Management Actions	Responsible person	Method of implementation	Timeframe for implementation	Responsible party for monitoring	Frequency of monitoring	Evidence of compliance
• The facilities must be serviced on a regular basis to prevent any overflow or spillage; • The servicing contractor must dispose of the waste in an approved manner (e.g., via the municipal wastewater treatment system); • The ECO must be provided with the service providers' details and the service schedule for the site; • The toilets should be secured to ensure that they do not blow over in windy conditions; • All toilet facilities must be removed from site on completion of the contract period, and; • Should the construction period be interrupted by a builder's break, the toilets should be emptied prior to the break.				toilet service records to the ESA on a weekly basis.		

Sanitation during operation is discussed separately in the sections below.

5.18 BLASTING ACTIVITIES

Since the PV panel mountings will be drilled / rammed into the earth and will thus not require extensive excavation for foundations, it is therefore unlikely that blasting will be required. Should blasting be required for whatever reasons, the following actions must be implemented:

Impact management outcome: To ensure any blasting activities do not disturb sensitive environmental nor social features.

Impact Management Actions	Responsible person	Method of implementation	Timeframe for implementation	Responsible party for monitoring	Frequency of monitoring	Evidence of compliance
• No blasting may take place within 50m of a borehole without approval of a suitably qualified engineering geologist. Preventative mitigation actions could include installing PVC casing and screens in potentially affected boreholes before blasting, while damaged boreholes will have to be re-drilled; • A current and valid permit shall be obtained from the relevant authorities prior to any blasting activity; • A method statement shall be required for any blasting related activities; • All laws and regulations applicable to blasting activities shall be adhered to at all times; • A qualified and registered blaster shall supervise all blasting and rock splitting operations at all times; • The contractor shall ensure that appropriate pre-blast monitoring records are in place (i.e., photographic and inspection records of structures in close proximity to the blast area); • The contractor shall allow for good quality vibration monitoring equipment and record keeping on site at all times during blasting operations; • The contractor shall ensure that emergency services are notified, in writing, a minimum of 24 hours prior to any blasting activities commencing on site; • The contractor shall take necessary precautions to prevent damage to unique features and the general environment, which includes the removal of fly-rock. Environmental damage caused by blasting / drilling shall be repaired at the contractor's expense to the satisfaction of the ECO; • The contractor shall ensure that adequate warning is provided immediately prior to all blasting. All signals shall also be clearly given; • The contractor shall use blast mats for cover material during blasting. Topsoil may not be used as blast cover; • During demolition, the contractor shall ensure, where possible, that trees in the area are not damaged; • Appropriate blast shaping techniques shall be employed to aid in the landscaping of blast areas, and a method statement to be approved by the Engineer, shall be required in this regard; and • At least one week prior to blasting, the relevant occupants/owners of surrounding land shall be notified by the contractor and any concerns	EPC Contractor	The EPC contractor to provide method statement for blasting activities should they be needed.	Throughout the construction phase	ESA and ECO.	Daily	Weekly environmental checklists. Monthly environmental control reports.

Impact Management Actions	Responsible person	Method of implementation	Timeframe for implementation	Responsible party for monitoring	Frequency of monitoring	Evidence of compliance
addressed. Buildings within the potential damaging zone of the blast shall be surveyed, preferably with the owner present and any cracks or latent defects pointed out and recorded either using photographs or video. Failing to do so shall render the contractor fully liable for any claim of whatsoever nature, which may arise. The contractor shall indemnify the employer in this regard.						

5.19 THEFT AND ENVIRONMENTAL CRIME

An increase in crime during the construction phase is often a concern. In the case of this development, the risk is likely to be low due to the remote nature of the site. Theft and other crime associated with construction sites is not only a concern for surrounding residents, but also the developer and the contractor. Considering this, contractors need to be proactive in order to curtail theft and crime on and resulting from the construction site.

It is recommended that the contractor develop a jobsite security plan prior to commencement of construction. This jobsite security plan should consider protection of the construction site from both internal and external crime elements, as well as the protection of surrounding communities from internal crime elements. All incidents of theft or other crime should be reported to the South African Police Service, no matter how seemingly insignificant. A copy of the jobsite security plan should be included in the first environmental control report to be submitted to the competent authority.

It is likely that the Contractor's Site Camp and the PV Laydown area/s will be fenced with a temporary fence to avoid theft during construction. Additional security measures during construction may include CCTV camera surveillance and security guards.

Impact management outcome: To ensure that activities on site do not increase the criminal activity of the area.

Impact Management Actions	Responsible person	Method of implementation	Timeframe for implementation	Responsible party for monitoring	Frequency of monitoring	Evidence of compliance
• The following actions are relevant in this regard (refer to the section above for details of the facility permanent security fencing): • The EPC Contractor must develop a Job Site Security Plan for the project. • All portable construction equipment and material must be locked away within the Contractor's Site Camp overnight and during holiday periods; • Fuel storages tanks must be locked when not in use; • All unassembled / un-installed PV materials must be locked within the fenced Laydown areas overnight and during holiday periods. • The minimum amount of lighting should be used at night, and this should be of the low-UV emitting kind that attracts less insects. • The collection, hunting or harvesting of any plants or animals at the site is strictly forbidden, and thus any person found undertaking any of these actions will be considered guilty of committing a crime. Any incidents of such crimes on nature must be reported to the ECO immediately, who will report the incident to the SAPS.	EPC Contractor	Implementation of a Job site security plan to be compiled by the EPC.	Jobsite Security Plan to be prepared prior to site establishment Throughout the construction phase	ESA and ECO.	Daily	Weekly environmental checklists. Monthly environmental control reports.

5.20 REHABILITATION AND HABITAT RESTORATION

A detailed Rehabilitation and Habitat Restoration Plan must be compiled by a specialist prior to commencement of any construction activities.

One of the primary objectives of all the previously listed impact management outcomes are to avoid and reduce impact on the receiving environment, thus minimising the rehabilitation and restoration requirements on completion of construction. The EPC contractor must be mindful of this primary objective as part of all activities taking place on site.

Impact management outcome: To restore habitat disturbed during construction activities

Impact Management Actions	Responsible person	Method of implementation	Timeframe for implementation	Responsible party for monitoring	Frequency of monitoring	Evidence of compliance
Topsoil management • Effective topsoil management is a critical element of rehabilitation, particularly in arid and semi-arid areas where soil properties are a fundamental determinant of vegetation composition and abundance. Although some parts of the site consist of exposed bedrock, most parts of the site have at least some topsoil. Where any excavation or topsoil clearing is required, the topsoil should stockpiled and later used to cover cleared and disturbed areas once construction activity has ceased. • Excess inert material and other disturbed areas should be reshaped to blend in with the natural contours of the area; • The contractor must be mindful that should insufficient topsoil be available for rehabilitation purposes, additional topsoil will need to be sourced from a commercial source at a cost to the contractor. • Topsoil is the top-most layer (0-30cm) of the soil in undisturbed areas. This soil layer is important as it contains nutrients, organic matter, seeds, micro-organisms fungi and soil fauna. All these elements are necessary for soil processes such as nutrient cycling and the growth of new plants. The biologically active upper layer of the soil is fundamental in the maintenance of the entire ecosystem. • Topsoil should be retained on site in order to be used for site rehabilitation. The correct handling of the topsoil (as detailed earlier in the report) is a key element to rehabilitation success. Firstly, it is important that the correct depth of topsoil is excavated. If the excavation is too deep, the topsoil will be mixed with sterile deeper soil, leading to reduction in nutrient levels and a decline in plant performance on the soil. • Wherever possible, stripped topsoil should be placed directly onto an area being rehabilitated. This avoids stockpiling and double handling of the soil. Topsoil placed directly onto rehabilitation areas contains viable seed, nutrients and microbes that allow it to revegetate more rapidly than topsoil that has been in stockpile for long periods. • If direct transfer is not possible, the topsoil should be stored separately from other soil heaps until construction in an area is complete. The soil should not be stored for a long time and should be used as soon as possible. The longer	EPC Contractor	Implementation of the actions detailed here. Provision of a sufficient budget to undertake rehabilitation activities	Throughout the construction phase. Physical rehabilitation activities to be completed prior to contractual operations date.	ESA and ECO and Rehabilitation Specialist	Daily	Weekly environmental checklists. Monthly environmental control reports.

Impact Management Actions	Responsible person	Method of implementation	Timeframe for implementation	Responsible party for monitoring	Frequency of monitoring	Evidence of compliance
the topsoil is stored, the more seeds, micro-organisms and soil biota are killed. • Ideally stored topsoil should be used within a month and should not be stored for longer than three months. In addition, topsoil stores should not be too deep, a maximum depth of 1m is recommended to avoid compaction and the development of anaerobic conditions within the soil. **Ripping & Substrate preparation** • Before commencement with restoration activities detailed below, all identified rehabilitation areas that are compacted as a result of construction activities must be mechanically ripped. • Imported gravel layers (such as in the laydown area and site camp) must be removed prior to ripping and commencing with rehabilitation. **Mulching** • Mulching is the covering of the soil with a layer of organic matter of leaves, twigs bark or wood chips, usually chopped quite finely. The main purpose of mulching is to protect and cover the soil surface as well as serve as a source of seed for revegetation purposes. • During site clearing the standing woody vegetation should not be cleared and burned, removed or mixed with the soil, but should be cleared separately[15]. The cleared vegetation should be stockpiled and used whole or shredded by hand or machine to protect the soil in disturbed areas and promote the return of indigenous species. Where there is a low shrub or grass layer, this material can be cleared and mixed as part of the topsoil (or applied as a top mulch) as this will aid revegetation and recovery when it is reapplied. • All mulch should be harvested from areas that are to be denuded of vegetation during construction activities, provided that they are free of seed-bearing alien invasive plants;						

[15] Woody vegetation within the PV array should not be mechanically cleared, but rather slashed with a brush-cutter or by hand.

Impact Management Actions	Responsible person	Method of implementation	Timeframe for implementation	Responsible party for monitoring	Frequency of monitoring	Evidence of compliance
• No harvesting of vegetation may be done outside the area to be disturbed by construction activities; • Brush-cut mulch should be stored for as short a period as possible, and seed released from stockpiles can also be collected for use in the rehabilitation process. **Seeding** • In some areas the natural regeneration of the vegetation may be poor and the application of seed to enhance vegetation recovery may be required as directed by the ECO. • Seed should be collected from plants present at the site and should be used immediately or stored appropriately and used at the start of the following wet season. Seed can be broadcast onto the soil but should preferably be applied in conjunction with measures to improve seedling survival such as scarification of the soil surface or simultaneous application of mulch. • Indigenous seeds may be harvested[16] for purposes of re-vegetation in areas that are free of alien or invasive vegetation, either at the site prior to clearance or from suitable neighbouring sites; • Seed may be harvested by hand and if necessary dried or treated appropriately; • No seed of alien or foreign species should be used or brought onto the site. **Transplants** • Where succulent plants are available or other species which may survive translocation are present, individual plants can be dug out from areas about to be cleared and planted into areas which require revegetation. This can be an effective means of establishing indigenous species quickly, this is however unlikely to be a viable option at the current site as there are few suitable species present, but if the conditions are wet then most species have some probability of surviving.						

[16] Any seed harvesting required must be done with the appropriate permits in place.

Impact Management Actions	Responsible person	Method of implementation	Timeframe for implementation	Responsible party for monitoring	Frequency of monitoring	Evidence of compliance
• Plants for transplant should only be removed from areas that are going to be cleared. • Perennial grasses, shrubs, succulents and geophytes are all potentially suitable candidates for transplant. • Transplants should be placed within a similar environment from where they came in terms of aspect, slope and soil depth. • Transplants must remain within the site and may not be transported off the site. • Some species can also grow from cuttings and branches of many succulent species can be rooted in the field. **Use of soil savers** • On steep slopes (unlikely on the development site) and areas where seed and organic matter retention is low, it is recommended that soil savers are used to stabilise the soil surface. Soil savers are synthetic materials, usually constructed of organic material such as hemp or jute and are usually applied in areas where traditional rehabilitation techniques are not likely to succeed. • In areas where soil saver is used, it should be pegged down to ensure that is captures soil and organic matter flowing over the surface. • Soil saver may be seeded directly once applied as the holes in the material catch seeds and provide suitable microsites for germination. Alternatively, fresh mulch containing seed can be applied to the soil saver. **General recommendations** Progressive rehabilitation is a crucial element of the rehabilitation strategy and should be implemented where feasible. • Once re-vegetated, areas should be protected to prevent trampling and erosion. • No construction equipment, vehicles or unauthorised personnel should be allowed onto areas that have been vegetated. • Where rehabilitation sites are located within actively grazed areas, they should be fenced. • Fencing should be removed once a sound vegetative cover has been achieved.						

Impact Management Actions	Responsible person	Method of implementation	Timeframe for implementation	Responsible party for monitoring	Frequency of monitoring	Evidence of compliance
• Any runnels, erosion channels or washaways developing after revegetation should be backfilled and consolidated and the areas restored to a proper stable condition.						

As highlighted in the introduction to this section, the most cost-effective way to reduce the cost and effort for rehabilitation is to reduce and minimise the disturbance footprint. The installation of the panel arrays without total clearing site (i.e., only the physical removal of the woody species), is the biggest benefit that can be applied in this regard.

The PV panels and roads within the development represent hard surfaces that will generate a lot of runoff. As a result, effective runoff management is essential as is an effective vegetation cover to prevent widespread erosion across the site.

5.21 FAUNAL MANAGEMENT

Impact management outcome: To reduce the direct impact on animals affected by the construction activities.

Impact Management Actions	Responsible person	Method of implementation	Timeframe for implementation	Responsible party for monitoring	Frequency of monitoring	Evidence of compliance
• Any animals (including snakes, tortoises and lizards) directly threatened by the clearing or construction activities should be removed to a safe location outside of the construction area by the ECO or other suitably qualified/experienced person. • All trenches, open excavations and fence lines should be inspected daily (first thing in the morning) for any trapped fauna (particularly small mammals and reptiles). These should be removed to a safe location outside of the construction area by the ECO or other suitably qualified / experienced person. • Faunal ladders to be installed in all temporary water storage areas.	EPC Contractor	Implementation of the actions detailed here.	Throughout the construction phase.	ESA and ECO.	Daily	Weekly environmental checklists. Monthly environmental control reports.

Impact Management Actions	Responsible person	Method of implementation	Timeframe for implementation	Responsible party for monitoring	Frequency of monitoring	Evidence of compliance
• The development footprint may need to be flushed prior to completion of the perimeter fence to ensure that no large mammals become trapped within the development site. • All faunal mortalities are to be reported to the ESA, who must maintain a register of faunal mortalities. • The ESA must maintain a register of all faunal observations within the development site.						

5.22 HERITAGE FEATURES

Should any archaeological sites, artefacts, palaeontological fossils or graves be exposed during construction work, work in the immediate vicinity of the find must be stopped, Heritage Western Cape must be informed, and the services of an accredited heritage professional obtained.

.

Impact management outcome: Impact to heritage resources is minimised.

Impact Management Actions	Responsible person	Method of implementation	Timeframe for implementation	Responsible party for monitoring	Frequency of monitoring	Evidence of compliance
• Identify, demarcate and prevent impact to all known sensitive heritage features on site in accordance with the No-Go procedure detailed above; • Carry out general monitoring of excavations for potential fossils, artefacts and material of heritage importance; • All work in a specific area must cease immediately, if any human remains and/or other archaeological, palaeontological and historical material are uncovered. Such material, if exposed, must be reported to the nearest museum, archaeologist/ palaeontologist (or the South African Police Services), so that a systematic and professional investigation can be	EPC Contractor	Implementation of the actions detailed here. Implementation of chance find procedure.	Throughout the construction phase.	ESA and ECO.	Daily	Weekly environmental checklists. Monthly environmental control reports.

Impact Management Actions	Responsible person	Method of implementation	Timeframe for implementation	Responsible party for monitoring	Frequency of monitoring	Evidence of compliance
undertaken. Sufficient time must be allowed to remove/collect such material before development recommences in that area.						

6. OPERATIONAL PHASE – IMPACT MANAGEMENT OUTCOMES AND ACTIONS

This section provides details on the operational phase impact management outcomes and actions[17] that are commonly applicable to the operation of a PV Energy Facility and its associated infrastructure, as well as management actions outlined by participating specialists and those contained in the EA for the facility.

Each subsection includes an aspect identified for the development of a PV Energy Facility, and for each aspect a set of prescribed impact management outcomes and associated impact management actions have been identified.

The holder of the EA is ultimately responsible to ensure the implementation of these outcomes and actions.

Written notice of intent to commence operations must be submitted to the DFFE at least 14 days prior to the commencement of operations.

6.1 CLEANING OF PV MODULES

Any rainfall on the solar panels would be welcomed due to its cleaning effect, but as mentioned before, the annual predicted rainfall is extremely low. Water for cleaning panels should take place using water from lawful sources and can be supplemented from the rainwater collection / storage systems on site. To further reduce the use of water at the solar facility, the use of alternative panel cleaning methods could be investigated.

Impact management outcome: To ensure that cleaning of PV modules is lawful, resource efficient and does not cause erosion or pollution of the surrounding environment.

- [17] All Environmental Management Actions allocated to the O&M contractor will apply equally to all sub-contractors responsible for any specific task.

Impact Management Actions	Responsible person	Method of implementation	Timeframe for implementation	Responsible party for monitoring	Frequency of monitoring	Evidence of compliance
• Water for the cleaning of PV modules must be lawful. • Only clean water or biodegradable cleaning materials may be used for washing purposes. • Care should be taken that the wash-water does not cause any erosion (the use of labour intensive, or high pressure/low volume techniques is recommended in this regard). • Water used in the cleaning process is likely to encourage the growth of natural vegetation around the panel arrays and rows, which will require routine brush-cutting / trimming to avoid vegetation shading the panels, interfering with tracking mechanisms or the risk of fires. Under no circumstances should vegetation beneath or around the panel arrays and rows be cleared / removed entirely, as this will result in significant erosion and associated sandblasting of infrastructure. Due to stunted nature of the xerophytic vegetation, it is unlikely that this will need to be done often. Biomass produced from these trimming activities could be chipped and used as mulch under the PV panels (to increase stormwater infiltration and reduce erosion). • The management of a vegetated cover on as much of the site as possible must take place. This will reduce fugitive dust emissions and thus cleaning frequencies. • Where practical, adopt "dry" cleaning methods, such as dusting and sweeping the site before washing down. • Low level and ongoing cleaning of PV panels over time to reduce demand on aquifers.	O&M Contractor	Implementation of the actions detailed in this section.	Throughout the Operational Phase	O&M Contractor Audit consultant.	Daily by O&M Contractor. Annually as part of operational environmental audits	Operational Environmental Audit Report.

6.2 OPERATIONAL WASTE

During the operational phase of the development, the amount of waste generated is likely to be very minimal and limited to normal domestic waste generated in the office, workshop waste from maintenance activities and damaged PV modules.

It is proposed that the local municipality will provide services in terms of waste removal and sewage for the operational phase (excluding Hazardous Waste and damaged PV Modules) of the proposed project. However, should the municipality not have adequate capacity available for the handling of waste and sewage;

then the O&M Contractor must make use of private contractors to ensure that the services are provided. The O&M Contractor must also ensure that adequate waste disposal measures are implemented by obtaining waste disposal dockets / slips of all waste and sewage that is removed from site.

Impact management outcome: To promote an integrated waste[18] management approach and ensure the management of waste during the construction phase is both lawful and sustainable

Impact Management Actions	Responsible person	Method of implementation	Timeframe for implementation	Responsible party for monitoring	Frequency of monitoring	Evidence of compliance
• Wind and scavenger proof bins must be installed at the maintenance / control buildings and on-site substation and must be emptied on a weekly basis • All hazardous waste (including bitumen, fuel, oils, paints etc.) used during the operation and maintenance of the solar facility shall be disposed of at an approved/registered hazardous-waste landfill site. The contractor responsible for the disposal shall provide disposal certificates to the site manager. • Used oil and grease must be removed from site to an approved used oil recycling company. • Under NO circumstances may any hazardous waste be spoiled on the site. • The servicing of operation/maintenance vehicles may not take place on site. • Damaged PV modules should be stored in a designated area within the O&M complex before being returned to supplier[19] for recycling. • Biomass from vegetation management activities must not be disposed of off-site but must be utilised as mulch as part of the ongoing rehabilitation[20]. • Wastewater must be collected and disposed of at a suitable licenced disposal facility. Proof of disposal (i.e., waste disposal slips or waybills) should be retained on file for auditing purposes	O&M Contractor	Implementation of the actions detailed in this section.	Throughout the Operational Phase	O&M Contractor to implement and maintain records. Audit consultant.	Daily by O&M Contractor. Annually / three yearly as part of operational environmental audits	Operational Environmental Audit Report.

- [18] Waste in this instance excludes excess oils that may be spilled because of transformer failure. Such an incident is discussed separately under the Hazardous Substances, Leakage and Spillage Plan below.
- [19] Or third-party recycler.
- [20] This Biomass can be chipped should the volumes be high enough as to pose a fire risk.

6.3 OPERATIONAL GENERAL ECOLOGY CONSIDERATIONS

This section provides general management actions to ensure that operational activities do not degrade the ecological functioning of the site.

Impact management outcome: Ensure that operational activities do not degrade the ecological functioning of the site.

Impact Management Actions	Responsible person	Method of implementation	Timeframe for implementation	Responsible party for monitoring	Frequency of monitoring	Evidence of compliance
• Dust control should be continued into operation. • Any trimming of protected species that may establish under the modules must be done in accordance with a permit. • Other than the maintenance of the vegetated layer under the PV modules, NO further clearing of vegetation should take place. • Speed limits within the facility must be maintained and enforced. • Specialist advice to be sought for the management of any fauna that establishes within the site during operations. • The O&M contractor must monitor and report any Avifaunal Mortalities as a result of collision, entrapment or electrocution by project Infrastructure.	O&M Contractor	Implementation of the actions detailed in this section.	Throughout the Operational Phase	O&M Contractor to implement and maintain records. Audit consultant.	Daily by O&M Contractor. Annually / three yearly as part of operational environmental audits	Operational Environmental Audit Report.

6.4 GENERAL OPERATIONAL MAINTENANCE

The section in the table below details general operational maintenance environmental impact management actions that are not covered in the sections above.

Impact Management Actions	Responsible person	Method of implementation	Timeframe for implementation	Responsible party for monitoring	Frequency of monitoring	Evidence of compliance
• Lubricants used to grease bearing of panel tracking systems should be conservatively used to avoid leakage or spills. Any leaks or spills that occur during maintenance operations must be cleaned up immediately and the contaminated soil / material disposed on at a registered disposal site for hazardous materials. • The tracks / pathways between the PV panel rows used for cleaning and maintenance of the panels, should be maintained as single tracks and regularly brush-cut and/or mowed to allow reasonable access. • Access roads and the internal road network must be maintained in a condition that allows for reasonable access and minimised erosion potential. All drainage, stormwater management and erosion control structures must be maintained to ensure their proper functioning. • Regular monitoring for erosion to ensure that no erosion problems are occurring at the site because of the roads and other infrastructure. All erosion problems observed should be rectified as soon as possible. • All maintenance vehicles to remain on the demarcated roads. • The conservancy tank, associated with the ablution facilities at the on-site sub-station / maintenance buildings, must be maintained in full working condition. • The perimeter security fence should be routinely patrolled to ensure that is still allows for the passage of small and medium sized mammals, at least at strategic places, and that the electrified strands are not causing animal electrocution. • No unauthorized persons should be allowed onto the site. • The maintenance of the transmission line infrastructure must retain the bird-friendly design features (bird-flappers and insulation). Any bird electrocution and collision events that occur should be recorded, including the species affected and the date. If repeated collisions occur within the same area, then further mitigation and avoidance measures may need to be implemented. • Staff present during the operational phase should receive environmental education to ensure that that no hunting, killing or harvesting of plants and animals occurs.	O&M Contractor	Implementation of the actions detailed in this section.	Throughout the Operational Phase	O&M Contractor to implement and maintain records. Audit consultant.	Daily by O&M Contractor. Annually / three yearly as part of operational environmental audits	Operational Environmental Audit Report.

Impact Management Actions	Responsible person	Method of implementation	Timeframe for implementation	Responsible party for monitoring	Frequency of monitoring	Evidence of compliance
• All alien plants present at the site should be controlled at least twice a year using the best practice methods for the species present. • Bare soil should be kept to a minimum, and at least some grass or low shrub cover should be encouraged under the panels. • No pets should be allowed within the solar facility.						

6.5 AVIFAUNAL MANAGEMENT

The following avifaunal impact management actions must be implemented during the operational phase.

Impact	Mitigation/Management Objectives and Outcomes	Mitigation/Management Actions	Monitoring		
			Methodology	Frequency	Responsibility
Avifauna: Displacement due to habitat transformation					
Total or partial displacement of avifauna due to habitat transformation associated with the vegetation clearance and the presence of the solar PV plant and associated infrastructure.	Prevent unnecessary displacement of avifauna by ensuring that the rehabilitation of transformed areas is implemented, according to the recommendations of Avifaunal specialist study.	Implementation of the Habitat Restoration Plan	EPC or appointed contractor to provide report	Once-off Once a year As and when required	Project developer Facility Environmental Manager Project developer and facility operational manager
Avifauna: Mortality due to electrocution					
Electrocution of priority avifauna in the onsite substation or inverter station.	Prevention of ongoing electrocution of avifauna through reactive mitigation if necessary, depending on the gravity of the problem.	Implementation of mitigation measures such as insulation of live parts to prevent further electrocutions.	Site investigation to determine causes of the mortality. Implementation of appropriate measures e.g., insulation of live parts with appropriate products.	As and when required	Facility Environmental Manager Facility operational manager

7. ALIEN INVASIVE VEGETATION MANAGEMENT PLAN

Alien Invasive Vegetation Management Plan must be compiled by an Ecological Specialist prior to commencement of construction activities.

8. PLANT RESCUE AND PROTECTION PLAN / RE-VEGETATION AND HABITAT REHABILITATION PLAN

A Plant Rescue and protection Plan must be compiled by an Ecological Specialist prior to the commencement of construction.

9. OPEN SPACE MANAGEMENT PLAN

An Open Space Management Plan must be compiled by an Ecological Specialist prior to commencement of construction.

10. HAZARDOUS SUBSTANCES LEAKAGE OR SPILLAGE MONITORING SYSTEM

The following hazardous substances leakage or spillage monitoring system must be adopted and implemented.

Impact	Environmental Impact Management Action.	Monitoring		
		Methodology	Frequency	Responsibility
Contamination of soil and risk of damage to vegetation and/or fauna through spillage of concrete and cement.	If any concrete mixing takes placed on site, this must be carried out in a clearly marked, designated area at the site camp on an impermeable surface (such as on boards or plastic sheeting and/or within a bunded area with an impermeable surface).	Monitor the handling and storage of sand, stone and cement as instructed.	Daily	Holder of the EA, EPC contractor and ECO.
	Bagged cement must be stored in an appropriate facility and at least 10 m away from any water courses, gullies and drains.	Monitor the handling and storage of sand, stone and cement as instructed.	Daily	Holder of the EA, EPC contractor and ECO.
	A washout facility must be provided for washing of concrete associated equipment. Water used for washing must be restricted.	Monitor the handling and storage of sand, stone and cement as instructed.	Daily	Holder of the EA, EPC contractor and ECO.
	Hardened concrete from the washout facility or concrete mixer can either be reused or disposed of at an appropriate licenced disposal	Monitor the handling and storage of sand, stone and cement as instructed.	Daily Monthly	Holder of the EA, EPC contractor and ECO.

Impact	Environmental Impact Management Action.	Monitoring		
		Methodology	Frequency	Responsibility
	facility. Proof of disposal (i.e., waste disposal slips or waybills) should be retained on file for auditing purposes.	Monitor waste disposal slips and waybills via site audits and record non-compliance and incidents.		
	Empty cement bags must be secured with adequate binding material if these will be temporarily stored on site. Empty cement bags must be collected from the construction area at the end of every day. Sand and aggregates containing cement must be kept damp to prevent the generation of dust.	Monitor the handling and storage of sand, stone and cement as instructed.	Daily	Holder of the EA, EPC contractor and ECO.
	Any excess sand, stone and cement must be removed from site at the completion of the construction period and disposed at a licenced waste disposal facility. Proof of disposal (i.e., waste disposal slips or waybills) should be retained on file for auditing purposes.	Monitor the handling and storage of sand, stone and cement as instructed. Monitor waste disposal slips and waybills via site audits and record non-compliance and incidents.	Daily Monthly	Holder of the EA, EPC contractor and ECO.
Contamination of soil and risk of damage to vegetation and/or fauna through spillage of fuels and oils.	Ensure that adequate containment structures are provided for the temporary storage of liquid dangerous goods and hazardous materials on site (such as chemicals, oil, fuel, hydraulic fluids, lubricating oils etc.). Appropriate bund areas must be provided for the storage of these materials at the site camp. Bund areas should contain an impervious surface in order to prevent spillages from entering the ground. Bund areas should have a capacity of 110 % of the volume of the largest tank in the bund (tanks include storage of fuel/diesel).	Monitor the storage and handling of dangerous goods and hazardous materials on site via site audits and record non-compliance and incidents.	Weekly	EPC Contractor and ECO
	Monitor and inspect construction equipment and vehicles to ensure that no fuel spillage takes place. Ensure that drip trays are provided for construction equipment and vehicles as required.	Monitor the construction equipment and vehicles and monitor the occurrence of spills and the management process thereof. Record all spills and lessons learnt.	Daily During spill events	EPC Contractor and ECO
	Contractor to compile a Method Statement for refuelling activities under normal and emergency situations. If on-site servicing and refuelling is required in emergency situations, a designated area must be created at the construction site camp for this purpose. Drip trays[21] or similar impervious materials must be used during these procedures.	Verify if a Method Statement is compiled by reviewing approved and signed off reports. Monitor the refuelling/ servicing process and record the occurrence of any spillages.	Once-off prior to commencement of construction. During emergency refuelling and servicing activities.	ECO

- [21] In addition to the requirement to utilise a drip tray during refuelling, drip trays must be placed under all plant when it is not in use, regardless of whether this plant in the field or at the site camp.

Impact	Environmental Impact Management Action.	Monitoring		
		Methodology	Frequency	Responsibility
	Spilled fuel, oil or grease must be retrieved, and contaminated soil removed, cleaned and replaced.	Monitor the handling and storage of fuels and oils via site audits and monitor if spillages have taken place and if so, are removed correctly. Monitor waste disposal slips and waybills via site audits and record non-compliance and incidents.	Daily (or during spills)	EPC Contractor and ECO
	Contaminated soil to be collected by the Contractor (under observation of the ECO) and disposed of at a registered waste facility designated for this purpose. Proof of disposal (i.e., waste disposal slips or waybills) should be retained on file for auditing purposes.	Monitor the correct removal of contaminated soil. Monitor waste disposal slips and waybills via site audits and record non-compliance and incidents.	Daily (or during spills)	EPC Contractor and ECO
	A Spill Response Method Statement must be compiled by the Contractor for the construction phase to manage potential spill events.	Compile a Spill Response Method Statement. Audit signed and approved Spill Response Method Statement.	Once-off (and thereafter updated as required during the construction phase). Once-off (and thereafter as required during the construction phase).	Holder of the EA, EPC contractor and ECO.
	The Contractor must ensure that adequate spill containment and clean-up equipment are provided on site for use during spill events.	Monitor via site audits and record incidents and non-compliance.	Daily/Weekly	ECO and EPC Contractor
	Portable bioremediation kit (to remedy chemical spills) is to be held on site and used as required.	Ensure that a well-maintained portable bioremediation kit is available on site and that construction personnel and contractors are aware of its location and instructions	Daily	EPC Contractor and ECO
	In case of a spillage of hazardous chemicals where contamination of soil occurs, depending on the degree and level of contamination, excavation and removal to a hazardous waste disposal facility could be necessary. If the spillage is widespread and the soil is significantly contaminated, a specialist will need to be immediately appointed to address the spillage. This will usually entail the collection of samples of the contaminated soil followed by analysis in terms of the 2014 National Norms and Standards for the Remediation of Contaminated Land and Soil Quality (i.e., GN 331). If the soil is determined to be significantly	Ensure that a suitably qualified specialist is appointed to collect and analyse the contaminated soil samples in terms of the 2014 Norms and Standards (i.e., GN 331) to determine if the soil is significantly contaminated or not. If the contaminated soil is significantly contaminated, then compliance with	During spill events	Holder of the EA

Impact	Environmental Impact Management Action.	Monitoring		
		Methodology	Frequency	Responsibility
	contaminated, then compliance with Part 8 of the NEMWA should be achieved by the Applicant, including notifying the Minister of Environmental Affairs of the significant contamination.	Part 8 of the NEMWA should be achieved by the Applicant.		
	The Contractor must record and document all significant spill events.	Monitor documentation and records of significant spill events via audits and record non-compliance and incidents.	During spill events	ECO
Contamination of soil and risk of damage to vegetation and/or fauna through spillage of fuels and oils	Monitor and inspect maintenance equipment and vehicles to ensure that no fuel spillage takes place.	Implement specifications for maintenance equipment use as specified by the maintenance Contractor.	Monthly	Holder of the EA
	Spilled fuel, oil or grease is retrieved during operations where possible and contaminated soil removed, cleaned and replaced.	Monitor the handling and storage of fuels and oils via site audits and monitor if spillages have taken place and if so, are removed correctly. Monitor waste disposal slips and waybills via site audits and record non-compliance and incidents.	During spills	Holder of the EA
	Contaminated soil to be collected by the Contractor and disposed of at a registered waste facility designated for this purpose. Proof of disposal (i.e., waste disposal slips or waybills) should be retained on file for auditing purposes.	Monitor the correct removal of contaminated soil. Monitor waste disposal slips and waybills via site audits and record non-compliance and incidents.	During spills	Holder of the EA
	A Spill Response Plan must be compiled for the operational phase to manage potential spill events.	Compile a Spill Response Plan. Audit signed and approved Spill Response Method Statement.	Once-off (and thereafter updated as required). Once-off (and thereafter as required).	Holder of the EA and Facility Manager
	Ensure that adequate spill containment and clean-up equipment are provided on site for use during spill events. Portable bioremediation kit (to remedy chemical spills) is to be held on site and used as required.	Ensure that a well-maintained portable bioremediation kit is available on site and that operational	Weekly	Facility Manager

Impact	Environmental Impact Management Action.	Monitoring		
		Methodology	Frequency	Responsibility
		personnel are aware of its location and instructions.		
	In case of a spillage of hazardous chemicals where contamination of soil occurs, depending on the degree and level of contamination, excavation and removal to a hazardous waste disposal facility could be necessary. If the spillage is widespread and the soil is significantly contaminated, a specialist will need to be immediately appointed to address the spillage. This will usually entail the collection of samples of the contaminated soil followed by analysis in terms of the 2014 National Norms and Standards for the Remediation of Contaminated Land and Soil Quality (i.e., GN 331). If the soil is determined to be significantly contaminated, then compliance with Part 8 of the NEMWA should be achieved by the Applicant, including notifying the Minister of Environmental Affairs of the significant contamination.	Ensure that a suitably qualified specialist is appointed to collect and analyse the contaminated soil samples in terms of the 2014 Norms and Standards (i.e., GN 331) to determine if the soil is significantly contaminated or not. If the contaminated soil is significantly contaminated, then compliance with Part 8 of the NEMWA should be achieved by the Applicant.	During spill events	Holder of the EA
	Ensure that adequate containment structures are provided for the temporary storage of liquid dangerous goods and hazardous materials on site (such as chemicals, oil, fuel, hydraulic fluids, lubricating oils etc.). Appropriate bund areas must be provided for the storage of these materials at the PV facility. Bund areas should contain an impervious surface in order to prevent spillages from entering the ground. Bund areas should have a capacity of 110 % of the volume of the largest tank in the bund (tanks include storage of fuel/diesel).	Monitor the storage and handling of dangerous goods and hazardous materials on site via site audits and record non-compliance and incidents.	Weekly	Facility Manager
Impacts due to management solid and liquid wastes disposed of on the site during operational phase.	All operation waste to be removed from the site by an appointed service provider.	Waste removal and disposal to be monitored throughout operation.	Monthly	Facility Manager
	All liquid waste or spills (used oil, paints, lubricating compounds and grease from vehicles passing through the entrance facility) to be packaged and disposed appropriately at a registered landfill site.	Monitor the correct removal of liquid waste or spills. Monitor waste disposal slips and waybills via site audits and record non-compliance and incidents.	During spills	Holder of the EA
	Adequate containers for the cleaning of equipment and materials (paint, solvent) must be provided to avoid spillages.	Monitor the storage and handling of dangerous goods and hazardous materials on site via site audits and record non-compliance and incidents.	Weekly	Facility Manager

11. STORMWATER MANAGEMENT AND EROSION MANAGEMENT PLAN

The Stormwater Management Plan appended to this EMPr must be adopted and Implimented.

12. FIRE MANAGEMENT PLAN

The following Fire Management Plan must be adopted and implemented.

The PV development site is arid, with sparse vegetation cover and fires are not a natural phenomenon in the area. However, under exceptional circumstances, such as following years of exceedingly high rainfall, sufficient biomass may build up to carry fires. Therefore, management of plant biomass within the site should be part of the management of the facility. Grazing by livestock is the simplest and most ecologically sound way to manage plant biomass and is recommended the preferred method to manage plant biomass at the site if found to be practical. Alternative management practices can include brush cutting. Utilisation of non-selective herbicides for the management of biomass is prohibited on site. The following environmental impact management actions must be implemented with regards to fire management.

Impact management outcome: To reduce the risk of fire to infrastructure and environment.

Impact Management Actions	Responsible person	Method of implementation	Timeframe for implementation	Responsible party for monitoring	Frequency of monitoring	Evidence of compliance
• Fires should only be allowed within fire-safe demarcated areas (and only within the site camp); • No fuelwood collection is allowed on-site;	EPC Contractor	In compliance with the actions defined as well as requirements detailed in the health and safety plan.	Throughout the construction phase	ESA and ECO	Daily	Weekly environmental checklists.

Impact Management Actions	Responsible person	Method of implementation	Timeframe for implementation	Responsible party for monitoring	Frequency of monitoring	Evidence of compliance
• The total removal of all invasive alien vegetation should take place to decrease the fire risk – Although there were few invasive plants found during the environmental process, these may establish to a degree as a result of site disturbance. This must be done in accordance with the Alien Vegetation Management Plan; • Cigarette butts may not be thrown in the veld but must be disposed of correctly. The contractor, must designate smoking areas (in compliance with the Tobacco Products Control Amendment Act 63 of 2008) with suitable receptacles for disposal; • In case of an emergency, the contact details of the local fire and emergency services must be readily available; • Contractors must ensure that basic firefighting equipment and suitably qualified/experienced personnel are available on site at all times, as per the specifications defined by the health and safety representative / consultant; • The fire risk on site is a point of discussion that must take place as part of the pre-construction compliance workshop and the environmental induction training prior to commencement of construction; • Biomass from the removal of woody vegetation currently present on site should be chipped to reduce its flammability, and • The contractor must also comply with the requirements of the Occupational Health and Safety Act with regards to fire protection.						Monthly environmental control reports.

13. DECOMISSIONING PHASE – IMPACT MANAGEMENT OUTCOMES AND ACTIONS

Should the activity ever cease or become redundant, the holder of the authorisation must undertake the required actions as prescribed by legislation at the time and comply with all relevant legal requirements.

After the lifespan of the facility[22] (20-25 years), there is a possibility that the entire facility will be decommissioned and closed (although other options for continuation may be investigated)

Appendix 5 of Regulation 982 of the 2014 EIA Regulations contains the required contents of a Closure Plan. The table below shows the minimum requirements for a closure plan. The operating entity for this facility must ensure that the closure plan complies with these requirements as well as any other legislative requirements that may come into effect during the lifecycle of the project.

Requirement
(1) A closure plan must include -
(a) Details of - (i) The EAP who prepared the closure plan; and (ii) The expertise of that EAP.
(b) Closure objectives.
(c) Proposed mechanisms for monitoring compliance with and performance assessment against the closure plan and reporting thereon.
(d) Measures to rehabilitate the environment affected by the undertaking of any listed activity or specified activity and associated closure to its natural or predetermined state or to a land use which conforms to the generally accepted principle of sustainable development including a handover report, where applicable.
(e) Information on any proposed avoidance, management and mitigation measures that will be taken to address the environmental impacts resulting from the undertaking of the closure activity.
(f) A description of the manner in which it intends to – (i) Modify, remedy, control or stop any action, activity or process which causes pollution or environmental degradation during closure; (ii) Remedy the cause of pollution or degradation and migration of pollutants during closure. (iii) Comply with any prescribed environmental management standards or practises; or (iv) Comply with any applicable provisions of the Act regarding closure.
(g) Time periods within which the measure contemplated in the closure plan must be implemented.
(h) The process for managing any environmental damage, pollution, pumping and treatment of extraneous water or ecological degradation as a result of closure.
(i) Details of all public participation processes conducted in terms of regulation 41 of the Regulation, including – (i) Copies of any representations and comments received from registered interested and affected parties; (ii) A summary of comments received from, and a summary of issues raised by registered interested and affected parties, the date of receipt of these comments and the response of the EAP to those comments;

- [22] For the purposes of this section, the lifespan of the facility is deemed to be the period of the power purchase agreement.

Requirement
(iii) The minutes of any meetings held by the EAP with interested and affected parties and other role players which record the views of the participants; (iv) Where applicable, an indication of the amendments made to the plan as a result of public participation processes conduction in terms of regulation 41 of these Regulations.
(j) Where applicable, details of any financial provisions for the rehabilitation, closure and ongoing post decommissioning management of negative environmental impacts.

Within a period of at least 12 months prior to the planned closure and decommissioning of the site, a Closure Plan must be prepared and submitted to the Local Planning Authority, as well as the Provincial and National Environmental Authorities and the Department of Forestry, Fisheries and the Environment (DFFE)) for input and approval. This plan must provide detail pertaining to site restoration, soil replacement, landscaping, pro-active conservation, and a timeframe for implementation. Furthermore, the Closure Plan must comply with any additional legislation and guidelines that may be applicable at the time.

Two possible scenarios are considered for this decommissioning phase, as follows:

13.1 SCENARIO 1: TOTAL CLOSURE & DECOMMISSIONING OF SOLAR FACILITY

If the decision is taken at the end of the project lifespan (20 - 25 years) to totally decommission the solar facility i.e., make the land available for an alternative land use, a closure plan as detailed above should be developed and should include provision for the following:

- All concrete and solar infrastructure etc. must be removed from the solar site i.e., panels, support structures etc.;
- The holes where the panel support structures are removed must be levelled and covered with subsoil and topsoil;
- Tracks that are to be utilised for the future land use operations should be left in-situ. The remainder of the tracks to be removed (ripped), topsoil replaced and brush-packed to encourage re-vegetation and minimise erosion;
- All auxiliary buildings and access points should be demolished, and rubble removed, unless they can be used for/by the future land use. The competent authority may prescribe that the landscaping and underground infrastructure i.e., foundations be left *in situ;*
- The underground electric cables must be removed, if they cannot be used in the future land use;
- All material (cables, PV Panels etc.) must be re-used or recycled wherever possible. Functional panels that still produce sufficient output could be repurposed upon decommissioning;
- The disturbed portions of the site must be brush-packed, replanted and/or seeded with locally sourced indigenous vegetation (as prescribed by the competent authorities) to allow re-vegetation and rehabilitation of the site (see plant species list attached);
- Discontinuation of Lease and Easement Agreements for main land and assess roads;
- Consider whatever is economically or socially beneficial and risky for the project's Owners and other Stakeholders at this last stage
    - This could include selling equipment on secondary market, recycling of metals and modules as scrap, using some or all the proceeds to pay the local labour for uninstallation work, etc?
    - PV leaves no pollution and the equipment other than the modules which should be reused or recycled (There is an existing market for this).

13.2 SCENARIO 2: PARTIAL DECOMMISSIONING / UPGRADE OF SOLAR FACILITY

Due to low variable costs and loans repaid long ago, any owner of the facility may be interested in prolonging technical, functional, legal and economic lives of the plants for as long as possible, even beyond Power Purchase Agreement.

- This will require disposal of assets with shorter technical lives are critical (inverters, etc). PV modules, substructures, cables have a lifespan that should be longer than 25 years;
- Under this option, the O&M contractor will have to ensure that the validity period of all licences / permits and agreements is extended where necessary and that any legislation that has subsequently been promulgated is considered.

Should more advanced technology become available it may be decided to continue to use the site as a renewable energy / photovoltaic / solar facility. Should this be the case, it is likely that much of the existing infrastructure will be re-used in the upgraded facility.

All infrastructure that will no longer be required for the upgraded facility must be removed as described in Scenario 1 above. The remainder of the infrastructure should remain in place or upgraded depending on the requirements of the new facility. As described for Scenario 1 above, the function PV panels that are still capable of producing sufficient output, could be donated to local schools and clinics. Any upgrades to the facility at this stage must comply with relevant legislation and guidelines of the time.

14. MONITORING AND AUDITING

This section provided additional information of the monitoring and auditing requirements for the facility. It should be read in conjunction with the monitoring requirements outlined in the environmental impact management action tables as well the section on document control and reporting (which mainly deals with the internal monitoring requirements).

Environmental monitoring and audits are fundamental in ensuring the implementation of the management actions contained within this EMP are environmentally sustainable during development and operation of this PV Facility.

14.1 ENVIRONMENTAL MONITORING

14.1.1 Construction ECO and ESA Monitoring

The ECO, assisted by the ESA, is responsible for environmental monitoring during of the construction phase impact management actions as outlined in of this EMPr. The monthly environmental control reports compiled by the ECO (which include the weekly environmental checklists compiled by the ESA), as well as the photographic record of works, must be submitted to the Holder of the EA, the EPC contractor, the local authority, the provincial environmental authority, the national environmental authority and Eskom.

The following overarching recording and reporting requirements are required[23]:

- The holder of the authorisation must keep all records relating to monitoring and auditing on site and make it available for inspection to any relevant and competent authority in respect of this development.
- These compliance records must be submitted to the Director: Compliance monitoring at the DFFE.

14.1.2 Construction Phase Alien Vegetation Monitoring

- [23] This must be read in conjunction with section 2 of the EMPr

This section must be read in conjunction with the Alien Invasive Vegetation Management Plan once completed.

The following monitoring actions should be implemented during the construction phase of the development.

Table 4: Alien vegetation monitoring requirements during the construction phase.

Monitoring Action	Indictor	Timeframe
Document alien species present at the site	List of alien species	Preconstruction
Document alien plant distribution	Alien plant distribution map within priority areas	3 Monthly
Document & record alien control measures implemented	Record of clearing activities	3 Monthly
Review & evaluation of control success rate	Decline in documented alien abundance over time	Biannually

14.1.3 Operational Phase Alien Vegetation Monitoring

This section must be read in conjunction with the Alien Invasive Vegetation Management Plan once completed.

The following monitoring actions should be implemented during the operational phase of the development.

Table 5: Alien vegetation monitoring requirements during the operational phase

Monitoring Action	Indictor	Timeframe
Document alien species distribution and abundance over time at the site	Alien plant distribution map	Biannually
Document alien plant control measures implemented & success rate achieved	Records of control measures and their success rate. A decline in alien distribution and cover over time at the site	Biannually
Document rehabilitation measures implemented, and success achieved in problem areas	Decline in vulnerable bare areas over time	Biannually

14.1.4 Rehabilitation and Habitat Restoration Monitoring requirements

As rehabilitation success, particularly in arid areas is unpredictable, monitoring and follow-up actions are important to achieve the desired cover and soil protection.

- Re-vegetated areas should be monitored every 4 months for the first 12 months following construction.
- Re-vegetated areas showing inadequate surface coverage (less than 20% within 12 months after re-vegetation) should be prepared and re-vegetated;
- Any areas showing erosion, should be re-contoured and seeded with indigenous grasses or other locally occurring species which grow quickly.

14.1.5 Plant Rescue Monitoring Requirements

It is important to monitor the success of the plant rescue operations, in order to the licencing authority on such conditional rescue.

Post construction monitoring of plants translocated during search and rescue must be undertaken to evaluate the success of the intervention. Biannual monitoring for 2 years post-transplant should be sufficient to gauge success.

The condition and numbers of all the rescued plants should be recorded and provided to the Audit consultant for inclusion in the environmental audit report.

14.2 ENVIRONMENTAL AUDITING[24]

The holder of the environmental authorisation must, for the period during which the environmental authorisation is valid, ensure that project compliance with the conditions of the environmental authorisation and the EMPr are audited, and that the audit reports are submitted to the Director: Compliance Monitoring at DFFE

This EMPr recommends that audits be submitted to the following auditing schedule:

- Within 6 months of commencement of construction activities;
- Within 30 days of completion of construction and rehabilitation activities;
- Every 3 years after the initial operational audit.

To promote transparency and cooperative governance, the results of relevant audits should be submitted to:

- The operators of the facility;
- The local authority;
- The provincial environmental authority:
- The national environmental authority: (DFFE); and
- Eskom.

The results of the audit must be recorded in an environmental audit report and any non-compliance must be formally recorded, along with the response-action required or undertaken. Each non-compliance incident report must be issued to the relevant person(s), so that the appropriate corrective and preventative action is taken within an agreed upon timeframe.

The table below shows the legislated requirements of an audit reports, and all relevant environmental audits undertaken as part of this development (during construction and operation) should comply with these requirements.

Table 6: Contents of an audit report

(1) An Environmental audit report prepared in terms of these Regulations must contain:
(a) Details of – (i) The independent person who prepared the environmental audit report; and (ii) The expertise of independent person that compiled the environmental audit report.
(b)Details of – (i) The independent person who prepared the environmental audit report; and (ii) The expertise of independent person that compiled the environmental audit report.
(c) A declaration that the independent auditor is independent in a form as may be specified by the competent authority.
(d) An indication of the scope of, and the purpose for which, the environmental audit report was prepared.
(e) A description of the methodology adopted in preparing the environmental audit report.
(f) An indication of the ability of the EMPr, and where applicable the closure plan to – (i) Sufficiently provide for the avoidance, management and mitigation of environmental impacts associated with the undertaking of the activity on an on-going basis; (ii) Sufficiently provide for the avoidance, management and mitigation of environmental impacts associated with the closure of the facility; and (iii) Ensure compliance with the provisions of environmental authorisation, EMPr, and where applicable, the closure plan.

- [24] To ensure independence, the auditing defined in this section cannot be undertaken, by the Holder of the EA, the EPC contractor, nor the Environmental Control Officer. These should be undertaken by an external audit consultant.

(g) A description of any assumptions made, and any uncertainties or gaps in knowledge.
(h) A description of a consultation process that was undertaken during the course of carrying out the environmental audit report.
(i) A summary and copies of any comments that were received during any consultation process
(j) Any other information requested by the competent authority.

15. METHOD STATEMENTS

Method statements are written submissions by the Contractor to the Employers Representative and ECO in response to the requirements of this EMPr or in response to a request by the Employers Representative or ECO. The Contractor shall be required to prepare method statements for several specific construction activities and/or environmental management aspects.

The Contractor shall not commence the activity for which a method statement is required until the Employers Representative and ECO have approved the relevant method statement.

Method statements must be submitted at least five (5) working days prior to the proposed date of commencement of the specific activity. Failure to submit a method statement may result in suspension of the activity concerned until such time as a method statement has been submitted and approved.

An approved method statement shall not absolve the Contractor from any of his obligations or responsibilities in terms of the contract. However, any damage caused to the environment through activities undertaken without an approved method statement shall be rehabilitated at the contractor's cost.

Additional method statements can be requested at the ECO's discretion at any time during the construction phase.

The method statements should include relevant details, such as:

- Construction procedures and location on the construction site;
- Start date and duration of the specific construction procedure;
- Materials, equipment and labour to be used;
- How materials, equipment and labour would be moved to and from the development site, as well as on site during construction;
- Storage, removal and subsequent handling of all materials, excess materials and waste materials;
- Emergency procedures in case of any potential accident / incident which could occur during the procedure;
- Compliance / non-compliance with an EMPr specification and motivation for proposed non-compliance.

15.1 METHOD STATEMENTS REQUIRED

Based on the specifications in this EMPr, the following method statements are likely to be required as a minimum (more method statements may be requested at any time as required under the direction of the ECO):

- Vegetation clearing & topsoil stripping, and associated stockpiling;
- Hazardous substances declaration of use, handling and storage – e.g., for fuels, chemicals, oils and any other harmful / toxic / hazardous materials;
- Cement and concrete batching;
- Traffic, transport & delivery accommodation e.g., need for traffic diversion/turning circles etc.;
- Solid waste management / control procedures;
- Stormwater and wastewater management / control systems;
- Erosion remediation and stabilisation;
- Fire control and emergency procedures;

- Job site security plan;
- Blasting activities (if necessary);
- Drilling and Ramming activities;
- Re-vegetation, rehabilitation and re-seeding.

16. HEALTH & SAFETY

The holder of the Authorisation must train safety representatives, managers and workers in workplace safety. The construction process must be compliant with all safety and health measures by the relevant act.

This section aims to provide a high-level overview to occupational Health and Safety Act but does not in any manner replace the project specific Health and Safety plan which would need to be compiled and approved in terms of this act and associated regulations.

The Occupational Health and Safety Act (No. 85 of 1993) aims to provide for / ensure the health and safety of persons at work or in connection with the activities of persons at work and to establish an advisory council for occupational health and safety.

The main Contractor must ensure compliance with the Occupational Health and Safety Act, as well as that all subcontractors comply with the Occupational Health and Safety Act.

The following is of key importance (Section 8 of the previously mentioned Act):

General duties of employers to their employees

(1) Every employer shall provide and maintain, as far as is reasonably practicable, a working environment that is safe and without risk to the health of his employees.

(2) Without derogating from the generality of an employer's duties under subsection (1), the matters to which those duties refer include in particular-

(a) the provision and maintenance of systems of work, plant and machinery that, as far as is reasonably practicable, are safe and without risks to health;

(b) taking such steps as may be reasonably practicable to eliminate or mitigate any hazard or potential hazard to the safety or health of employees, before resorting to personal protective equipment;

(c) making arrangements for ensuring, as far as is reasonably practicable, the safety and absence of risks to health in connection with the production, processing, use, handling, storage or transport of articles or substances;

(d) establishing, as far as is reasonably practicable, what hazards to the health or safety of persons are attached to any work which is performed, any article or substance which is produced, processed, used, handled, stored or transported and any plant or machinery which is used in his business, and he shall, as far as is reasonably practicable, further establish what precautionary measures should be taken with respect to such work, article, substance, plant or machinery in order to protect the health and safety of persons, and he shall provide the necessary means to apply such precautionary measures;

(e) providing such information, instructions, training and supervision as may be necessary to ensure, as far as is reasonably practicable, the health and safety at work of his employees;

(f) as far as is reasonably practicable, not permitting any employee to do any work or to produce, process, use, handle, store or transport any article or substance or to operate any plant or machinery, unless the precautionary measures contemplated in paragraphs (b) and (d), or any other precautionary measures which may be prescribed, have been taken;

(g) taking all necessary measures to ensure that tire requirements of this Act are complied with by every person in his employment or on premises under his control where plant or machinery is used;

(h) enforcing such measures as may be necessary in the interest of health and safety;

(i) ensuring that work is performed, and that plant or machinery is used under the general supervision of a person trained to understand the hazards associated with it and who have the authority to ensure that precautionary measures taken by the employer are implemented; and

(j) causing all employees to be informed regarding the scope of their authority as contemplated in section 37 (1) (b).

17. CONTRACTORS CODE OF CONDUCT

The Contractor's Code of Conduct is a document to be drawn up by the holder of the EA[25] and provided to all contractors or subcontractors that undertake any service on site. This code of conduct should include generic conduct rules for construction and operation activities on this Solar Energy Facility and must be signed by all contractors. **This code of conduct does not exonerate contractors from complying with this EMPr and must not be viewed as a stand-alone document**.

The following general template is suggested for this Code of Conduct document and must be adapted and updated to include the provisions of this EMPr, recommendations of participating specialists, conditions of approval of the Environmental Authorisation, conditions imposed by the Local Authority (as part of the rezoning and consent use), as well as all service agreements.

17.1 OBJECTIVES

To ensure compliance with the Conditions of the Environmental Authorisation, the Environmental Management Programme (EMPr), recommendations of participating specialists, conditions imposed by the Local Authority as part of the rezoning and subdivision, as well as the service agreements.

- To ensure the least possible damage to:
  - Existing infrastructure on and adjacent to the site;
  - Indigenous flora and fauna (biophysical environment); and
  - Water quality of surface and groundwater on and surrounding the site;
- Construction and development are undertaken with due consideration to all environmental factors;
- Where such damage occurs, provision is made for re-instatement and rehabilitation;

17.2 ACCEPTANCE OF REQUIREMENTS

To achieve these objectives, the Developer and EPC Contractor bind themselves jointly and severally to fulfil and comply with all the obligations contained herein, as well as prescriptions and obligations contained in other documents controlling the development of this Solar Energy Facility.

17.3 CONTRACTOR'S PRE-CONSTRUCTION OBLIGATIONS

Contractors may not commence any construction of this Solar Energy Facility until:

- The Contractor and the ECO have carried out a joint site inspection (this is to be done as part of the pre-construction compliance workshop as detailed in the EMPr above);
- A qualified ecologist has undertaken an inspection of the final development footprint and determined the number, species and extent of protected / listed plant species within this area;

[25] or delegated to the EPC contractor.

- A permit for the removal or relocation-and-transplant of any protected / listed plant species must be obtained, where necessary;
- Search and rescue of sensitive plants, within the development footprint has been carried out in compliance with the plant rescue and protection plan and signed off by the ECO (where this is necessary);
- The construction and no-go areas are suitably demarcated to the satisfaction of the ECO;
- Where necessary, approval of Building / Construction Plans has been obtained from the local authority; and
- All contract staff have attended the required environmental induction training and on-going environmental education sessions, as necessary.

17.4 CONTRACTOR'S OBLIGATIONS DURING CONSTRUCTION

- The Contractor is required to comply with the necessary Health and Safety requirements as required by the Occupational Health and Safety Act of 1993;
- The Contractor must comply with the construction requirements as detailed in the EMPr, including the following plans once they are completed prior to commencement of construction:
    - Transport & Traffic Management Plan,
    - Stormwater and Erosion-Control Management Plan,
    - Vegetation Clearing & Plant Rescue Plan (to be developed),
    - Re-vegetation & Rehabilitation Plan (to be developed),
    - Alien Management Plan (to be developed),
    - Open Space Management Plan (to be developed);
- The contractor must comply with all the requirements detailed in the Environmental Authorisation;
- All conditions, processes and fees as prescribed by the Local Authority must be complied with.

18. PENALTIES

Should any person commit an action of non-compliance he/she may be convicted of an offence, in terms of Sub-regulation (1) of the National Environmental Management Act, to imprisonment for a period not exceeding ten years or to a fine not exceeding R10 Million as prescribed in terms of the Adjustment of Fines Act, 1991 (Act No. 101 of 1991).

Apart from a fine resulting from any legal mechanism, the ECO may advise the Employers Representative to impose a penalty for non-compliance in terms of this Environmental Management Programme (EMPr). The procedure detailed below is for a spot fine in terms of this EMPr and does not detail the procedure for fining in terms of any other legal mechanism.

18.1 PROCEDURES

The contractor shall comply with the environmental specifications and requirements of this EMPr, the EA and Section 28 of NEMA, on an on-going basis and any failure on his part to do so will entitle the ER to impose a penalty.

In the event of non-compliance, the following recommended process shall be followed:

- The ECO shall issue a notice of non-compliance to the employer's representative, stating the nature and magnitude of the contravention. A copy shall be provided to the Project Developer / Proponent.
- The Employers Representative will issue this notice to the Contractor.
- The Contractor shall act to correct the transgression within the period specified by the Employers Representative.

- The Contractor shall provide the Employers Representative with a written statement describing the actions to be taken to discontinue the non-compliance, the actions taken to mitigate its effects and the expected results of the actions. A copy shall be provided to the Project Developer / Proponent.
- In the case of the Contractor failing to remedy the situation within the predetermined period, the Employers Representative shall impose a monetary penalty (spot fine) based on the conditions of contract.
- Should the transgression be a blatant disregard of conditions of the EMPr or EA, the Employers Representative (on advice from the ECO) can at their discretion immediately issue a fine and require the remediation (without first giving the contractor a chance to remediate).
- In the case of non-compliance giving rise to physical environmental damage or destruction, the Employers Representative shall be entitled to undertake or to cause to be undertaken such remedial works as may be required to make good such damage and to recover from the Contractor the full costs incurred in doing so.
- In the event of a dispute, difference of opinion, etc. between any parties in regard to or arising out of interpretation of the conditions of the EMPr, disagreement regarding the implementation or method of implementation of conditions of the EMPr or EA etc. any party shall be entitled to require that the issue be referred to specialists for determination.
- The Employers Representative on advice from the ECO shall always have the right to stop work and/or certain activities on site in the case of non-compliance or failure to implement remediation measures.

18.2 OFFENCES AND PENALTIES

Any avoidable non-compliance with the conditions of the EMPR shall be considered sufficient ground for the imposition of a monetary penalty by the Employers Representative.

Possible offences, which should result in the issuing of a contractual penalty, include, but are not limited to:

- Unauthorised entrance into no-go areas;
- Catching and killing of wild animals, and removal or damage to conservation-worthy plant species;
- Open fires outside of the contractor camp site and insufficient fire control;
- Unauthorised damage to natural vegetation;
- Unauthorised camp establishment (including stockpiling, storage, etc.);
- Hydrocarbons / hazardous material: negligent spills / leaks and insufficient storage;
- Ablution facilities: non-use, insufficient facilities, insufficient maintenance;
- Insufficient solid waste management (including clean-up of litter, unauthorised dumping etc.;
- Erosion due to negligence / non-performance;
- Excessive cement / concrete spillage / contamination;
- Non-induction of staff.

19. ABBREVIATIONS

AIA	Archaeological Impact Assessment
BGIS LUDS	Biodiversity Geographic Information System Land Use Decision Support
CBA	Critical Biodiversity Area
CDSM	Chief Directorate Surveys and Mapping
CEMPr	Construction Environmental Management Programme

DEFF	Department of Environment, Forestry and Fisheries
DEA&NC	Department of Environmental Affairs and Nature Conservation
DME	Department of Minerals and Energy
DSR	Draft Scoping Report
EAP	Environmental Impact Practitioner
EHS	Environmental, Health & Safety
EIA	Environmental Impact Assessment
EMPr	Environmental Management Programme
ESA	Ecological Support Area
GPS	Global Positioning System
GWh	Giga Watt hour
HIA	Heritage Impact Assessment
I&APs	Interested and Affected Parties
IDP	Integrated Development Plan
IFC	International Finance Corporation
IPP	Independent Power Producer
kV	Kilo Volt
LUDS	Land Use Decision Support
LUPO	Land Use Planning Ordinance
MW	Mega Watt
NEMA	National Environmental Management Act
NEMBA	National Environmental Management: Biodiversity Act
NERSA	National Energy Regulator of South Africa
NHRA	National Heritage Resources Act
NPAES	National Protected Area Expansion Strategy
NSBA	National Spatial Biodiversity Assessment
NWA	National Water Act

PM	Post Meridiem; “Afternoon”
PSDF	Provincial Spatial Development Framework
S.A.	South Africa
SACAA / CAA	South African Civil Aviation Authority
SAHRA	South African National Heritage Resources Agency
SANBI	South Africa National Biodiversity Institute
SANS	South Africa National Standards
SDF	Spatial Development Framework
TOPS	Threatened and Protected Species

Evacuation Powerline

Laydown area

100m Corridor Powerline

R2-1

R2-2

Main access road

Onsite SS

BESS Area

R2-3

R2-4

Internal road

Tracker PV Table

Fence

Leasing area

R2-12

R2-11

R2-13

R2-5

MV Line/ Trench

Inverter Transformer Station

R2-6

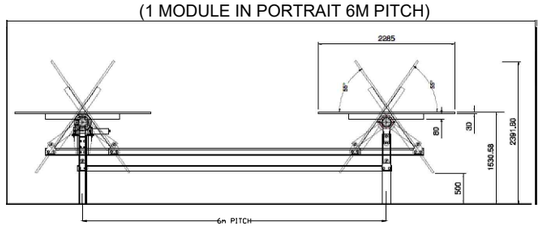
R2-10

R2-9

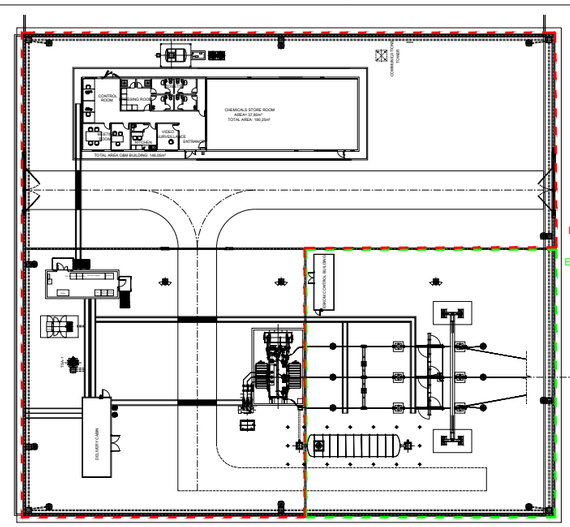
R2-7

R2-8

TYPICAL TRACKER DETAIL
(1 MODULE IN PORTRAIT 6M PITCH)



ONSITE SUBSTATION



ROAN 2 LEASING LIMITS
UTM WGS84

Corner	Easting[m]	Northing [m]	Time zone
R2-1	442585.536	7034297.588	35J
R2-2	440642.109	7034086.756	35J
R2-3	440735.698	7033489.235	35J
R2-4	441061.857	7033373.35	35J
R2-5	442160.629	7032871.941	35J
R2-6	442337.228	7032125.524	35J
R2-7	442430.731	7031644.175	35J
R2-8	443805.456	7031453.418	35J
R2-9	443790.755	7032060.274	35J
R2-10	443351.579	7032081.151	35J
R2-11	443314.162	7032934.91	35J
R2-12	443114.792	7032971.819	35J
R2-13	442494.372	7032837.47	35J

LEGEND:

- PV Leasing limits
- Fence
- Tracker PV table 2 strings (58 modules)
- Inverter Transformer Station
- MV Line/Trench
- Access gate
- Access road
- Corridor access road
- Delivery cabin
- Laydown area
- Internal road
- Onsite Substation+ Switching SS+BESS (2Ha)
- Gravel road/Path
- Tertiary road
- Evacuation Powerline Options
- 100m corridor Powerline
- Residential
- Meteo Equipment
- Water tank

SENSITIVY AREAS:

- High sensitivity area
- 100m-Buffer Wetland
- 100m-Buffer Tertiary Road
- 100m-Buffer Adjacent land parcels
- River
- 100m buffer River
- Waterbody

Rev.	Description	Date	Author
A	First edition	12/04/2022	C.Blanco

N

Horizontal Scale in meters
Graphical

Client:

Country: South Africa	**Address:**
Project: Roan 2 PV Plant	**Project No.:** RSA_PV_ROA 2

Title: Preliminary Layout Roan 2 PV Plant

Industrial Engineer: Raúl Latorre Rodrigo
Prof. Eng. No.:

	DATE	NAME - SURNAME
DRAWN:	12/04/2022	C.Blanco
CHECKED:	12/04/2022	R. Latorre
APPROVED:	12/04/2022	R. Latorre

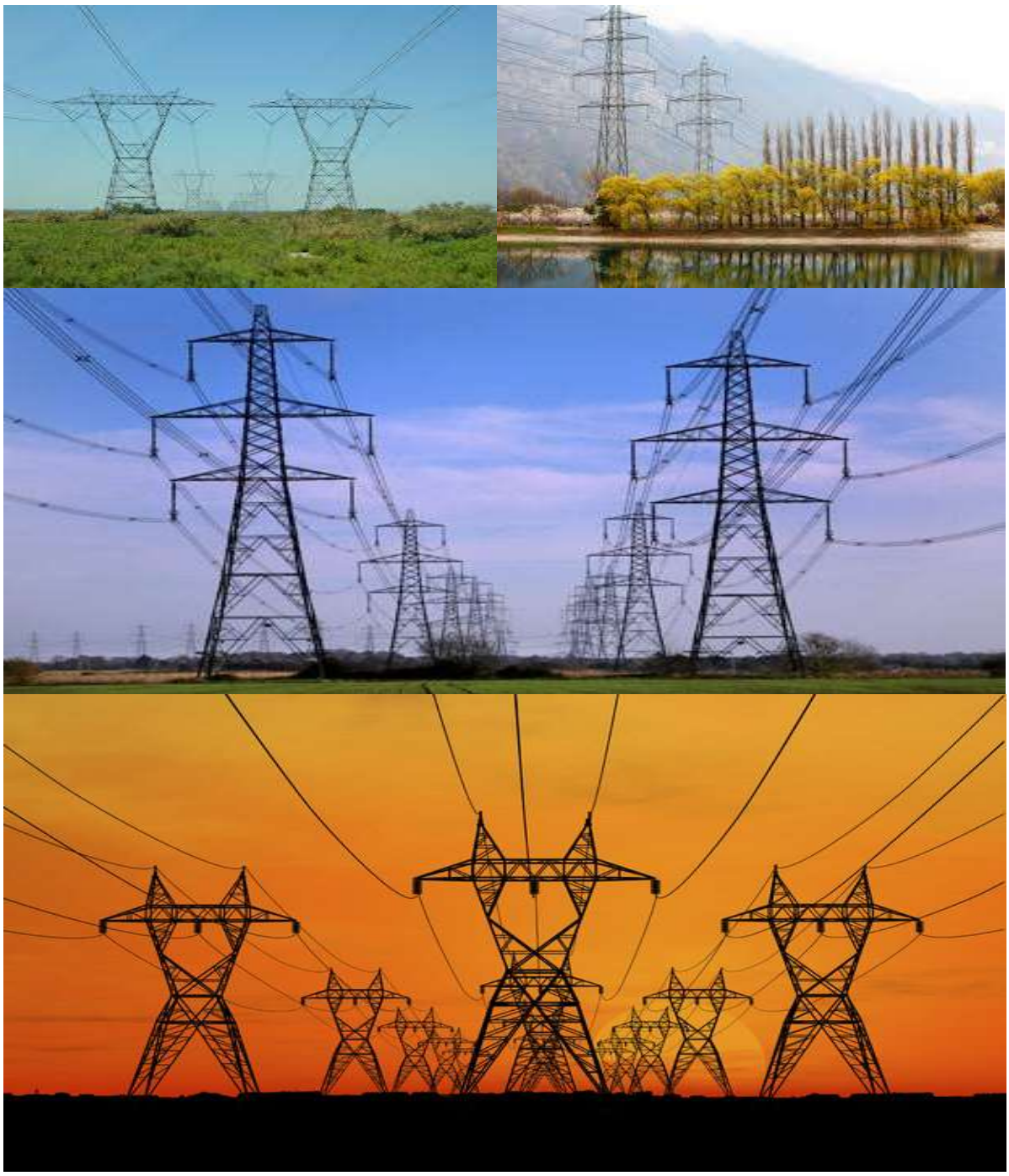
Rev: A | Sheet: 1 of 1
Scale: N / A | Format: A3
DWG No.:

AMDA energía SA
CIF: A-98024219
Avda. Gómez Laguna 25, 4º planta
50009 Zaragoza, SPAIN
T. +34 976 531 020

AMDA energía

APPENDIX 1

GENERIC ENVIRONMENTAL MANAGEMENT PROGRAMME (EMPr) FOR THE DEVELOPMENT AND EXPANSION FOR OVERHEAD ELECTRICITY TRANSMISSION AND DISTRIBUTION INFRASTRUCTURE



environmental affairs
Department:
Environmental Affairs
REPUBLIC OF SOUTH AFRICA

TABLE OF CONTENTS

List of figures

List of tables

INTRODUCTION

1. Background

The National Environmental Management Act, 1998 (Act No. 107 of 1998) (NEMA) requires that an environmental management programme (EMPr) be submitted where an environmental impact assessment (EIA) has been identified as the environmental instrument to be utilised as the basis for a decision on an application for environmental authorisation (EA). The content of an EMPr must either contain the information set out in Appendix 4 of the Environmental Impact Assessment Regulations, 2014, as amended, (EIA Regulations) or must be a generic EMPr relevant to an application as identified and gazetted by the Minister in a government notice. Once the Minister has identified, through a government notice, that a generic EMPr is relevant to an application for EA, that generic EMPr must be applied by all parties involved in the EA process, including, but not limited to, the applicant and the competent authority (CA).

2. Purpose

This document constitutes a generic EMPr relevant to applications for the development or expansion of overhead electricity transmission and distribution infrastructure, and all listed and specified activities necessary for the realisation of such infrastructure.

3. Objective

The objective of this generic EMPr is to prescribe and pre-approve generally accepted impact management outcomes and impact management actions, which can commonly and repeatedly be used for the avoidance, management and mitigation of impacts and risks associated with the development or expansion of overhead electricity transmission and distribution infrastructure. The use of a generic EMPr is intended to reduce the need to prepare and review individual EMPrs for applications of a similar nature.

4. Scope

The scope of this generic EMPr applies to the development or expansion of overhead electricity transmission and distribution infrastructure requiring EA in terms of NEMA, i.e. with a capacity of 33 kilovolts or more. This generic EMPr applies to activities requiring EA, mainly activity 11 and 47 of the Environmental Impact Assessment Regulations Listing Notice 1 of 2014, as amended, and activity 9 of the Environmental Impact Assessment Regulations Listing Notice 2 of 2014, as amended, and all associated listed or specified activities necessary for the realisation of such infrastructure.

5. Structure of this document

This document is structured in three parts with an Appendix as indicated in the table below:

Part	Section	Heading	Content
A		Provides general guidance and information and is **not legally binding**	Definitions, acronyms, roles & responsibilities and documentation and reporting.
B	1	Pre-approved generic EMPr template	Contains generally accepted impact management outcomes and impact management actions required for the avoidance, management and mitigation of impacts and risks associated with the development or expansion of overhead electricity transmission and distribution infrastructure, which are presented in the form of a template that has been pre-approved. The template in this section is to be completed by the contractor, with each completed page signed and dated by the holder of the EA prior to commencement of the activity. Where an impact management outcome is not relevant, the words "not applicable" can be inserted in the template under the "responsible persons" column. Once completed and signed, the template represents the EMPr for the activity approved by the CA and is legally binding. The template **is not required** to be submitted to the CA as once the generic EMPr is gazetted for implementation, it has been approved by the CA. To allow interested and affected parties access to the pre-approved EMPr template for consideration through the decision-making process, the EAP on behalf of the applicant /proponent must make the hard copy of this EMPr available at a public location and where the applicant has a website, the EMPr should also be made available on such publicly accessible website.
	2	Site specific information	Contains preliminary infrastructure layout and a declaration that the applicant/holder of the EA will comply with the pre-approved generic EMPr

Part	Section	Heading	Content
			template contained in Part B: Section 1, and understands that the impact management outcomes and impact management actions are **legally binding**. The preliminary infrastructure layout must be finalized to inform the final EMPr that is to be submitted with the basic assessment report (BAR) or environmental impact assessment report (EIAR), ensuring that all impact management outcomes and actions have been either pre-approved or approved in terms of Part C. This section **must be** submitted to the CA together with the final BAR or EIAR. The information submitted to the CA will be considered to be incomplete should a signed copy of Part B: section 2 not be submitted. Once approved, this Section forms part of the EMPr for the development and is legally binding.
C		Site specific sensitivities/ attributes	If any specific environmental sensitivities/ attributes are present on the site which require site specific impact management outcomes and impact management actions, not included in the pre-approved generic EMPr, to manage impacts, these specific impact management outcomes and impact management actions must be included in this section. These specific environmental attributes must be referenced spatially and impact management outcomes and impact management actions must be provided. These specific impact management outcomes and impact management actions must be presented in the format of the pre-approved EMPr template (Part B: section 1) This section will not be required should the site contain no specific environmental sensitivities or attributes. However, if Part C is applicable to the site, it **is required** to be submitted together with the BAR or EIAR, for consideration of, and decision on, the application for EA. The information in this section must be prepared by an EAP, and must contain his/her name and expertise including a curriculum vitae. Once approved, Part C forms part of the EMPr for the site and is legally binding.

Part	Section	Heading	Content
			This section applies only **to additional** impact management outcomes and impact management actions that are necessary for the avoidance, management and mitigation of impacts and risks associated with the specific development or expansion and which are not already included in Part B: section 1.
Appendix 1			Contains the method statements to be prepared prior to commencement of the activity. The method statements are **not required** to be submitted to the competent authority.

6. Completion of part B: section 1: the pre-approved generic EMPr template

The template is to be completed prior to commencement of the activity, by providing the following information for each environmental impact management action:

- For implementation
  - a 'responsible person',
  - a method for implementation,
  - a timeframe for implementation
- For monitoring
  - a responsible person
  - frequency
  - evidence of compliance.

The completed template must be signed and dated by the holder of the EA prior to commencement of the activity. The method statements prepared and agreed to by the holder of the EA must be appended to the template as Appendix 1. Each method statement must be signed and dated on each page by the holder of the EA. This template, once signed and dated, is legally binding. The holder of the EA will remain responsible for its implementation.

7. Amendments of the impact management outcomes and impact management actions

Once the activity has commenced, a holder of an EA may make amendments to the impact management outcomes and impact management actions in the following manner:

- Amendment of the impact management outcomes: in line with the process contemplated in regulation 37 of the EIA Regulations; and
- Amendment of the impact management actions: in line with the process contemplated in regulation 36 of the EIA Regulations.

8. Documents to be submitted as part of part B: section 2 site specific information and declaration

Part B: Section 2 has three distinct sub-sections. The first and third sub-sections are in a template format. Sub-section two requires a map to be produced.

Sub-section 1 contains the project name, the applicant's name and contact details, the site information, which includes coordinates of the corridor in which the proposed overhead electricity transmission and distribution infrastructure is proposed as well as the 21-digit Surveyor General code of each cadastral land parcel and, where available, the farm name.

Sub-section 2 is to be prepared by an EAP and must contain his/her name and expertise including a curriculum vitae. This sub-section must include a map of the site sensitivity overlaid with the preliminary infrastructure layout using the national web based environmental screening tool, when available for compulsory use at: https://screening.environment.gov.za/screeningtool. The sensitivity map shall identify the nature of each sensitive feature e.g. raptor nest, threatened plant species, archaeological site, etc. Sensitivity maps must identify features both within the planned working area and any known sensitive features in the surrounding landscape within 50m from the development footprint. The overhead transmission and distribution profile must be illustrated at an appropriate resolution to enable fine scale interrogation. It is recommended that <20 km of overhead transmission and distribution length is illustrated per page in A3 landscape format. Where considered appropriate, photographs of sensitive features in the context of tower positions must be used.

Sub-section 3 is the declaration that the applicant/proponent or holder of the EA in the case of a change of ownership must complete, which confirms that the applicant/EA holder will comply with the pre-approved generic EMPr template in Section 1 and understands that the impact management outcomes and actions are legally binding.

(a) Amendments to Part B: Section 2 – site specific information and declaration

Should the EA be transferred, Part B: Section 2 must be completed by the new applicant/proponent and submitted with the application for an amendment of the EA in terms of Regulations 29 or 31 of the EIA Regulations, whichever applies. The information submitted as part of such an application for an amendment to an EA will be considered to be incomplete should a signed copy of Part B: Section 2 not be submitted. Once approved, Part B: Section 2 forms part of the EMPr for the development and the EMPr becomes legally binding to the new EA holder.

PART A – GENERAL INFORMATION

1. DEFINITIONS

In this EMPr any word or expression to which a meaning has been assigned in the NEMA or EIA Regulations has that meaning, and unless the context requires otherwise –

"clearing" means the clearing and removal of vegetation, whether partially or in whole, including trees and shrubs, as specified;

"construction camp" is the area designated for key construction infrastructure and services, including but not limited to offices, overnight vehicle parking areas, stores, the workshop, stockpile and lay down areas, hazardous storage areas (including fuels), the batching plant (if one is located at the construction camp), designated access routes, equipment cleaning areas and the placement of staff accommodation, cooking and ablution facilities, waste and wastewater management;

"contractor" - The Contractor has overall responsibility for ensuring that all work, activities, and actions linked to the delivery of the contract, are in line with the Environmental Management Programme and that Method Statements are implemented as described.

"hazardous substance" is a substance governed by the Hazardous Substances Act, 1973 (Act No. 15 of 1973) as well as the Hazardous Chemical and Substances Regulations, 1995;

"method statement" means a written submission by the Contractor to the Project Manager in response to this EMPr or a request by the Project Manager and ECO. The method statement must set out the equipment, materials, labour and method(s) the Contractor proposes using to carry out an activity identified by the Project Manager when requesting the Method Statement. This must be done in such detail that the Project Manager and ECO is able to assess whether the Contractor's proposal is in accordance with this specification and/or will produce results in accordance with this specification;

The method statement must cover applicable details with regard to:

(i) Construction procedures;
(ii) Plant, materials and equipment to be used;
(iii) Transporting the equipment to and from site;
(iv) How the plant/ material/ equipment will be moved while on site;
(v) How and where the plant/ material/ equipment will be stored;
(vi) The containment (or action to be taken if containment is not possible) of leaks or spills of any liquid or material that may occur;
(vii) Timing and location of activities;
(viii) Compliance/ non-compliance; and
(ix) Any other information deemed necessary by the Project Manager.

"slope" means the inclination of a surface expressed as one unit of rise or fall for so many horizontal units;

"solid waste" means all solid waste, including construction debris, hazardous waste, excess cement/ concrete, wrapping materials, timber, cans, drums, wire, nails, food and domestic waste (e.g. plastic packets and wrappers);

"spoil" means excavated material which is unsuitable for use as material in the construction works or is material which is surplus to the requirements of the construction works;

"topsoil" means a varying depth (up to 300 mm) of the soil profile irrespective of the fertility, appearance, structure, agricultural potential, fertility and composition of the soil; and

"works" means the works to be executed in terms of the Contract

2. ACRONYMS and ABBREVIATIONS

CA	Competent Authority
cEO	Contractors Environmental Officer
dEO	Developer Environmental Officer
DPM	Developer Project Manager
DSS	Developer Site Supervisor
EAR	Environmental Audit Report
ECA	Environmental Conservation Act No. 73 of 1989
ECO	Environmental Control Officer
EA	Environmental Authorisation
EIA	Environmental Impact Assessment
ERAP	Emergency Response Action Plan
EMPr	Environmental Management Programme Report
EAP	Environmental Assessment Practitioner
FPA	Fire Protection Agency
HCS	Hazardous chemical Substance
NEMA	National Environmental Management Act, 1998 (Act No. 107 of 1998)
NEMBA	National Environmental Management: Biodiversity Act ,2004 (Act No. 10 of 2004)
NEMWA	National Environmental Management: Waste Act, 2008 (Act No. 59 of 2008)
MSDS	Material Safety Data Sheet
RI&AP's	Registered interested and affected parties

3. ROLES AND RESPONSIBILITIES FOR ENVIRONMENTAL MANAGEMENT PROGRAMME (EMPr) IMPLEMENTATION

The effective implementation of this generic EMPr is dependent on established and clear roles, responsibilities and reporting lines within an institutional framework. This section of the EMPr gives guidance to the various environmental roles and reporting lines, however, project specific requirements will ultimately determine the need for the appointment of specific person(s) to undertake specific roles and or responsibilities. As such, it must be noted that in the event that no specific person, for example, an environmental control officer (ECO) is appointed, the holder of the EA remains responsible for ensuring that the duties indicated in this document for action by the ECO are undertaken.

Table 1: *Guide to roles and responsibilities for implementation of an EMPr*

Responsible Person (s)	**Role and Responsibilities**
Developer's Project Manager (DPM)	Role The Project Developer is accountable for ensuring compliance with the EMPr and any conditions of approval from the competent authority (CA). Where required, an environmental control officer (ECO) must be contracted by the Project Developer to objectively monitor the implementation of the EMPr according to relevant environmental legislation, and the conditions of the environmental authorisation (EA). The Project Developer is further responsible for providing and giving mandate to enable the ECO to perform responsibilities, and he must ensure that the ECO is integrated as part of the project team while remaining independent. Responsibilities - Be fully conversant with the conditions of the EA; - Ensure that all stipulations within the EMPr are communicated and adhered to by the Developer and its Contractor(s); - Issuing of site instructions to the Contractor for corrective actions required; - Monitor the implementation of the EMPr throughout the project by means of site inspections and meetings. Overall management of the project and EMPr implementation; and - Ensure that periodic environmental performance audits are undertaken on the project implementation.
Developer Site Supervisor (DSS)	Role The DSS reports directly to the DPM, oversees site works, liaises with the contractor(s) and the ECO. The DSS

Responsible Person (s)	Role and Responsibilities
	is responsible for the day to day implementation of the EMPr and for ensuring the compliance of all contractors with the conditions and requirements stipulated in the EMPr. Responsibilities - Ensure that all contractors identify a contractor's Environmental Officer (cEO); - Must be fully conversant with the conditions of the EA. Oversees site works, liaison with Contractor, DPM and ECO; - Must ensure that all landowners have the relevant contact details of the site staff, ECO and cEO; - Issuing of site instructions to the Contractor for corrective actions required; - Will issue all non-compliances to contractors; and - Ratify the Monthly Environmental Report.
Environmental Control Officer (ECO)	Role The ECO should have appropriate training and experience in the implementation of environmental management specifications. The primary role of the ECO is to act as an independent quality controller and monitoring agent regarding all environmental concerns and associated environmental impacts. In this respect, the ECO is to conduct periodic site inspections, attend regular site meetings, pre-empt problems and suggest mitigation and be available to advise on incidental issues that arise. The ECO is also required to conduct compliance audits, verifying the monitoring reports submitted by the cEO. The ECO provides feedback to the DSS and Project Manager regarding all environmental matters. The Contractor, cEO and dEO are answerable to the Environmental Control Officer for non- compliance with the Performance Specifications as set out in the EA and EMPr. The ECO provides feedback to the DSS and Project Manager, who in turn reports back to the Contractor and potential and Registered Interested &Affected Parties' (RI&AP's), as required. Issues of non-compliance raised by the ECO must be taken up by the Project Manager, and resolved with the Contractor as per the conditions of his contract. Decisions regarding environmental procedures, specifications and requirements which have a cost implication (i.e. those that are deemed to be a variation, not allowed for in the Performance Specification) must be endorsed by the Project Manager. The ECO must also, as specified by the EA, report to the relevant CA as and when required. Responsibilities

Responsible Person (s)	Role and Responsibilities
	The responsibilities of the ECO will include the following: - Be aware of the findings and conclusions of all EA related to the development; - Be familiar with the recommendations and mitigation measures of this EMPr; - Be conversant with relevant environmental legislation, policies and procedures, and ensure compliance with them; - Undertake regular and comprehensive site inspections / audits of the construction site according to the generic EMPr and applicable licenses in order to monitor compliance as required; - Educate the construction team about the management measures contained in the EMPr and environmental licenses; - Compilation and administration of an environmental monitoring plan to ensure that the environmental management measures are implemented and are effective; - Monitoring the performance of the Contractors and ensuring compliance with the EMPr and associated Method Statements; - In consultation with the Developer Site Supervisor order the removal of person(s) and/or equipment which are in contravention of the specifications of the EMPr and/or environmental licenses; - Liaison between the DPM, Contractors, authorities and other lead stakeholders on all environmental concerns; - Compile a regular environmental audit report highlighting any non-compliance issues as well as satisfactory or exceptional compliance with the EMPr; - Validating the regular site inspection reports, which are to be prepared by the contractor Environmental Officer (cEO); - Checking the cEO's record of environmental incidents (spills, impacts, legal transgressions etc) as well as corrective and preventive actions taken; - Checking the cEO's public complaints register in which all complaints are recorded, as well as action taken; - Assisting in the resolution of conflicts; - Facilitate training for all personnel on the site – this may range from carrying out the training, to reviewing the training programmes of the Contractor; - In case of non-compliances, the ECO must first communicate this to the Senior Site Supervisor, who has the power to ensure this matter is addressed. Should no action or insufficient action be taken, the ECO may report this matter to the authorities as non-compliance; - Maintenance, update and review of the EMPr; - Communication of all modifications to the EMPr to the relevant stakeholders.
developer Environmental Officer	Role

Responsible Person (s)	Role and Responsibilities
(dEO)	The dEOs will report to the Project Manager and are responsible for implementation of the EMPr, environmental monitoring and reporting, providing environmental input to the Project Manager and Contractor's Manager, liaising with contractors and the landowners as well as a range of environmental coordination responsibilities. <u>Responsibilities</u> - Be fully conversant with the EMPr; - Be familiar with the recommendations and mitigation measures of this EMPr, and implement these measures; - Ensure that all stipulations within the EMPr are communicated and adhered to by the Employees, Contractor(s) ; - Confine the development site to the demarcated area; - Conduct environmental internal audits with regards to EMPr and authorisation compliance (on cEO); - Assist the contractors in addressing environmental challenges on site; - Assist in incident management: - Reporting environmental incidents to developer and ensuring that corrective action is taken, and lessons learnt shared; - Assist the contractor in investigating environmental incidents and compile investigation reports; - Follow-up on pre-warnings, defects, non-conformance reports; - Measure and communicate environmental performance to the Contractor; - Conduct environmental awareness training on site together with ECO and cEO; - Ensure that the necessary legal permits and / or licenses are in place and up to date; - Acting as Developer's Environmental Representative on site and work together with the ECO and contractor;
Contractor	<u>Role</u> The Contractor appoints the cEO and has overall responsibility for ensuring that all work, activities, and actions linked to the delivery of the contract are in line with the EMPr and that Method Statements are implemented as described. External contractors must ensure compliance with this EMPr while performing the onsite activities as per their contract with the Project Developer. The contractors are required, where

Responsible Person (s)	Role and Responsibilities
	specified, to provide Method Statements setting out in detail how the impact management actions contained in the EMPr will be implemented during the development or expansion for overhead electricity transmission and distribution infrastructure activities. Responsibilities - project delivery and quality control for the development services as per appointment; - employ a suitably qualified person to monitor and report to the Project Developer's appointed person on the daily activities on-site during the construction period; - ensure that safe, environmentally acceptable working methods and practices are implemented and that equipment is properly operated and maintained, to facilitate proper access and enable any operation to be carried out safely; - attend on site meeting(s) prior to the commencement of activities to confirm the procedure and designated activity zones; - ensure that contractors' staff repair, at their own cost, any environmental damage as a result of a contravention of the specifications contained in EMPr, to the satisfaction of the ECO.
contractor Environmental Officer (cEO)	Role Each Contractor affected by the EMPr should appoint a cEO, who is responsible for the on-site implementation of the EMPr (or relevant sections of the EMPr). The Contractor's representative can be the site agent; site engineer; a dedicated environmental officer; or an independent consultant. The Contractor must ensure that the Contractor's Representative is suitably qualified to perform the necessary tasks and is appointed at a level such that she/he can interact effectively with other site Contractors, labourers, the Environmental Control Officer and the public. As a minimum the cEO shall meet the following criteria: Responsibilities - Be on site throughout the duration of the project and be dedicated to the project; - Ensure all their staff are aware of the environmental requirements, conditions and constraints with respect to all of their activities on site; - Implementing the environmental conditions, guidelines and requirements as stipulated within the EA,

Responsible Person (s)	Role and Responsibilities
	EMPr and Method Statements; - Attend the Environmental Site Meeting; - Undertaking corrective actions where non-compliances are registered within the stipulated timeframes; - Report back formally on the completion of corrective actions; - Assist the ECO in maintaining all the site documentation; - Prepare the site inspection reports and corrective action reports for submission to the ECO; - Assist the ECO with the preparing of the monthly report; and - Where more than one Contractor is undertaking work on site, each company appointed as a Contractor will appoint a cEO representing that company.

4. ENVIRONMENTAL DOCUMENTATION REPORTING AND COMPLIANCE

To ensure accountable and demonstrated implementation of the EMPr, a number of reporting systems, documentation controls and compliance mechanisms must be in place for all overhead electricity transmission and distribution infrastructure projects as a minimum requirement.

4.1 Document control/Filing system

The holder of the EA is solely responsible for the upkeep and management of the EMPr file. At a minimum, all documentation detailed below will be stored in the EMPr file. A hard copy of all documentation shall be filed, while an electronic copy may be kept where relevant. A duplicate file will be maintained in the office of the DSS (where applicable). This duplicate file must remain current and up-to-date. The filing system must be updated and relevant documents added as required. The EMPr file must be made available at all times on request by the CA or other relevant authorities. The EMPr file will form part of any environmental audits undertaken as prescribed in the EIA Regulations.

4.2 Documentation to be available

At the outset of the project the following preliminary list of documents shall be placed in the filing system and be accessible at all times:

- Full copy of the signed EA from the CA in terms of NEMA, granting approval for the development or expansion;
- Copy of the generic and site specific EMPr as well as any amendments thereof;
- Copy of declaration of implementing generic EMPr and subsequent approval of site specific EMPr and amendments thereof;
- All method statements;
- Completed environmental checklists;
- Minutes and attendance register of environmental site meetings;
- An up-to-date environmental incident log;
- A copy of all instructions or directives issued;
- A copy of all corrective actions signed off. The corrective actions must be filed in such a way that a clear reference is made to the non-compliance record;
- Complaints register.

4.3 Weekly Environmental Checklist

The ECOs are required to complete a Weekly Environmental Checklist, the format of which is to be agreed prior to commencement of the activity. The ECOs are required to sign and date the checklist, retain a copy in the EMPr file and submit a copy of the completed checklist to the DSS on a weekly basis.

The checklists will form the basis for the Monthly Environmental Reports. Copies of all completed checklists will be attached as Annexures to the Environmental Audit Report as required in terms of the EIA Regulations.

4.4 Environmental site meetings

Minutes of the environmental site meetings shall be kept. The minutes must include an attendance register and will be attached to the Monthly Report that is distributed to attendees. Each set of minutes must clearly record "Matters for Attention" that will be reviewed at the next meeting.

4.5 Required Method Statements

The method statement will be done in such detail that the ECOs are enabled to assess whether the contractor's proposal is in accordance with the EMPr.

The method statement must cover applicable details with regard to:

- development procedures;
- materials and equipment to be used;
- getting the equipment to and from site;
- how the equipment/ material will be moved while on site;
- how and where material will be stored;
- the containment (or action to be taken if containment is not possible) of leaks or spills of any liquid or material that may occur;
- timing and location of activities;
- compliance/ non-compliance with the EMPr; and
- any other information deemed necessary by the ECOs.

Unless indicated otherwise by the Project Manager, the Contractor shall provide the following method statements to the Project Manager no less than 14 days prior to the commencement date of the activity:

- Site establishment – Camps, Lay-down or storage areas, satellite camps, infrastructure;
- Batch plants;
- Workshop or plant servicing;
- Handling, transport and storage of Hazardous Chemical Substance's;
- Vegetation management – Protected, clearing, aliens, felling;
- Access management – Roads, gates, crossings etc.;
- Fire plan;
- Waste management – transport, storage, segregation, classification, disposal (all waste streams);
- Social interaction – complaints management, compensation claims, access to properties etc.;
- Water – use (source, abstraction and disposal), access and all related information, crossings and mitigation;
- Emergency preparedness – Spills, training, other environmental emergencies;
- Dust and noise management methodologies;
- Fauna interaction and risk management – only if the risk was identified – wildlife interaction especially on game farms; and
- Heritage and palaeontology management.

The ECOs shall monitor and ensure that the contractors perform in accordance with these method statements. Completed and agreed method statements between the holder of the EA and the contractor shall be captured in Appendix 1.

4.6 Environmental Incident Log (Diary)

The ECOs are required to maintain an up-to-date and current Environmental Incident Log (environmental diary). The Environmental Incident Log is a means to record all environmental incidents and/or all non-compliance notice would not be issued. An environmental incident is defined as:

- Any deviation from the listed impact management actions (listed in this EMPr) that may be addressed immediately by the ECOs. (For example a contractor's staff member littering or a drip tray that has not been emptied);
- Any environmental impact resulting from an action or activity by a contractor in contravention of the environmental stipulations and guidelines listed in the EMPr which as a single event would have a minor impact but which if cumulative and continuous would have a significant effect (for example no toilet paper available in the ablutions for an afternoon); and
- General environmental information such as road kills or injured wildlife.

The ECOs are to record all environmental incidents in the Environmental Incident Log. All incidents regardless of severity must be reported to the Developer. The Log is to be kept in the EMPr file and at a minimum the following will be recorded for each environmental incident:

- The date and time of the incident;
- Description of the incident;
- The name of the Contractor responsible;
- The incident must be listed as significant or minor;
- If the incident is listed as significant, a non-compliance notice must be issued, and recorded in the log;
- Remedial or corrective action taken to mitigate the incident; and
- Record of repeat minor offences by the same contractor or staff member.

The Environmental Incident Log will be captured in the EAR.

4.7 Non-compliance

A non-compliance notice will be issued to the responsible contractor by the ECOs via the DSS or Project Manager. The non-compliance notice will be issued in writing; a copy filed in the EMPr file and will at a minimum include the following:

- Time and date of the non-compliance;
- Name of the contractor responsible;
- Nature and description of the non-compliance;
- Recommended / required corrective action; and
- Date by which the corrective action to be completed.
- The contractors shall act immediately when a notice of non-compliance is received and correct whatever is the cause for the issuing of the notice. Complaints

received regarding activities on the development site pertaining to the environment shall be recorded in a dedicated register and the response noted with the date and action taken. The ECO should be made aware of any complaints. Any non-compliance with the agreed procedures of the EMPr is a transgression of the various statutes and laws that define the manner by which the environment is managed. Failure to redress the cause shall be reported to the relevant CA for them to deal with the transgression, as it deems fit. The contractor is deemed not to have complied with the EMPr if, inter alia, There is a deviation from the environmental conditions, impact management outcomes and impact management actions , as approved in generic and site specific EMPr as relevant as set out in the EMPr, which deviation has, or may cause, an environmental impact.

4.8 Corrective action records

For each non-compliance notice issued, a documented corrective action must be recorded. On receiving a non-compliance notice from the DSS, the contractor's cEO will ensure that the corrective actions required take place within the stipulated timeframe. On completion of the corrective action the cEO is to issue a Corrective Action Report in writing to the ECOs. If satisfied that the corrective action has been completed, the ECOs are to sign-off on the Corrective Action Report, and attach the report to the non-compliance notice in the EMPr file. A corrective action is considered complete once the report has signed off by the ECOs.

4.9 Photographic record

A digital photographic record will be kept. The photographic record will be used to show before, during and post rehabilitation evidence of the project as well used in cases of damages claims if they arise. Each image must be dated and a brief description note attached.

The Contractor shall:

1. Allow the ECOs access to take photographs of all areas, activities and actions.

The ECOs shall keep an electronic database of photographic records which will include:

1. Pictures of all areas designated as work areas, camp areas, development sites and storage areas taken before these areas are set up;
2. All bunding and fencing;
3. Road conditions and road verges;
4. Condition of all farm fences;
5. Topsoil storage areas;
6. All areas to be cordoned off during construction;
7. Waste management sites;
8. Ablution facilities (inside and out);
9. Any non-conformances deemed to be "significant";
10. All completed corrective actions for non-compliances;
11. All required signage;
12. Photographic recordings of incidents;
13. All areas before, during and post rehabilitation; and
14. Include relevant photographs in the Final Environmental Audit Report.

4.10 Complaints register

The ECOs shall keep a current and up-to-date complaints register. The complaints register is to be a record of all complaints received from communities, stakeholders and individuals. The Complaints Record shall:

1. Record the name and contact details of the complainant;
2. Record the time and date of the complaint;
3. Contain a detailed description of the complaint;
4. Where relevant and appropriate, contain photographic evidence of the complaint or damage (ECOs to take relevant photographs); and
5. Contain a copy of the ECOs written response to each complaint received and keep a record of any further correspondence with the complainant. The ECO's written response will include a description of any corrective action to be taken and must be signed by the Contractor, ECO and affected party. Where a damage claim is issued by the complainant, the ECOs shall respond as described in (**section 4.11**) below.

4.11 Claims for damages

In the event that a Claim for Damages is submitted by a community, landowner or individual, the ECOs shall:

1. Record the full detail of the complaint as described in (**section 4.10**) above;
2. The DPM will evaluate the claim and associated damage and submit the evaluation to the Senior Site Representative for approval;
3. Following consideration by the DPM, the claim is to be resolved and settled immediately, or the reason for not accepting the claim communicated in writing to the claimant. Should the claimant not accept this, the ECO shall, in writing report the incident to the Developer's negotiator and legal department; and
4. A formal record of the response by the ECOs to the claimant as well as the rectification of the method of making payments not amount will be recorded in the EMPr file.

4.12 Interactions with affected parties

Open, transparent and good relations with affected landowners, communities and regional staff are an essential aspect to the successful management and mitigation of environmental impacts.

The ECOs shall:

1. Ensure that all queries, complaints and claims are dealt within an agreed timeframe;
2. Ensure that any or all agreements are documented, signed by all parties and a record of the agreement kept in the EMPr file;
3. Ensure that a complaints telephone numbers are made available to all landowners and affected parties; and
4. Ensure that contact with affected parties is courteous at all times;

4.13 Environmental audits

Internal environmental audits of the activity and implementation of the EMPr must be undertaken. The findings and outcomes must be included in the EMPr file and be submitted to the CA at intervals as indicated in the EA.

An Environmental Audit Report must be prepared monthly. The report will be tabled as the key point on the agenda of the Environmental Site Meeting. The Report is submitted for acceptance at the meeting and the final report will be circulated to the Project Manager and filed in the EMPr file. At a frequency determined by the EA, the ECOs shall submit the monthly reports to the CA. At a minimum the monthly report is to cover the following:

- Weekly Environmental Checklists;
- Deviations and non-compliances with the checklists;
- Non-compliances issued;
- Completed and reported corrective actions;
- Environmental Monitoring;
- General environmental findings and actions; and
- Minutes of the Bi-monthly Environmental Site Meetings.

4.14 Final environmental audits

On final completion of the rehabilitation and/or requirements of the EA a final EAR is to be prepared and submitted to the CA. The EAR must comply with Appendix 7 of the EIA Regulations.

PART B: SECTION 1: Pre-approved generic EMPr template

5. IMPACT MANAGEMENT OUTCOMES AND IMPACT MANAGEMENT ACTIONS

This section provides a pre-approved generic EMPr template with aspects that are common to the development of overhead electricity transmission and distribution infrastructure. There is a list of aspects identified for the development or expansion of overhead electricity transmission and distribution infrastructure, and for each aspect a set of prescribed impact management outcomes and associated impact management actions have been identified. Holders of EAs are responsible to ensure the implementation of these outcomes and actions for all projects as a minimum requirement, in order to mitigate the impact of such aspects identified for the development or expansion of overhead electricity transmission and distribution infrastructure.

The template provided below is to be completed by providing the information under each heading for each environmental impact management action.

The completed template must be signed and dated on each page by both the contractor and the holder of the EA prior to commencement of the activity. The method statements prepared and agreed to by the holder of the EA must be appended to the template as Appendix 1. Each method statement must also be duly signed and dated on each page by the contactor and the holder of the EA. This template, once signed and dated, is legally binding. The holder of the EA will remain responsible for its implementation.

5.1 Environmental awareness training

Impact management outcome: All onsite staff are aware and understands the individual responsibilities in terms of this EMPr.						
Impact Management Actions	**Implementation**			**Monitoring**		
	Responsible person	Method of implementation	Timeframe for implementation	Responsible person	Frequency	Evidence of compliance
– All staff must receive environmental awareness training prior to commencement of the activities; – The Contractor must allow for sufficient sessions to train all personnel with no more than 20 personnel attending each course; – Refresher environmental awareness training is available as and when required; – All staff are aware of the conditions and controls linked to the EA and within the EMPr and made aware of their individual roles and responsibilities in achieving compliance with the EA and EMPr; – The Contractor must erect and maintain information posters at key locations on site, and the posters must include the following information as a minimum: a)Safety notifications; and b) No littering. – Environmental awareness training must include as a minimum the following: a) Description of significant environmental impacts, actual or potential, related to their work activities; b) Mitigation measures to be implemented when carrying out specific activities; c) Emergency preparedness and response	**Main Contractor**	**ECO to undertake training**	**Prior to construction**	**ECO**	**Prior to construction**	**ECO Report**

procedures; d) Emergency procedures; e) Procedures to be followed when working near or within sensitive areas; f) Wastewater management procedures; g) Water usage and conservation; h) Solid waste management procedures; i) Sanitation procedures; j)Fire prevention; and k) Disease prevention. – A record of all environmental awareness training courses undertaken as part of the EMPr must be available; – Educate workers on the dangers of open and/or unattended fires; – A staff attendance register of all staff to have received environmental awareness training must be available. – Course material must be available and presented in appropriate languages that all staff can understand.						

5.2 Site Establishment development

Impact management outcome: Impacts on the environment are minimised during site establishment and the development footprint are kept to demarcated development area.						
Impact Management Actions	**Implementation**			**Monitoring**		
	Responsible person	Method of implementation	Timeframe for implementation	Responsible person	Frequency	Evidence of compliance
– A method statement must be provided by the contractor prior to any onsite activity that includes the layout of the construction camp in the form of a plan showing the location of key infrastructure and services (where applicable), including but not limited to offices, overnight vehicle parking areas, stores, the workshop, stockpile and lay down areas, hazardous materials storage areas (including fuels), the batching plant (if one is located at the construction camp), designated access routes, equipment cleaning areas and the placement of staff accommodation, cooking and ablution facilities, waste and wastewater management; – Location of camps must be within approved area to ensure that the site does not impact on sensitive areas identified in the environmental assessment or site walk through; – Sites must be located where possible on previously disturbed areas; – The camp must be fenced in accordance with ***Section 5.5: Fencing and gate installation***; and – The use of existing accommodation for contractor staff, where possible, is encouraged.	**Main contractor**	**Submission of method statement**	**Prior to specific activity**	**ECO**	**Monthly**	**ECO Report**

5.3 Access restricted areas

Impact management outcome: Access to restricted areas prevented.						
Impact Management Actions	**Implementation**			**Monitoring**		
	Responsible person	Method of implementation	Timeframe for implementation	Responsible person	Frequency	Evidence of compliance
– Identification of access restricted areas is to be informed by the environmental assessment, site walk through and any additional areas identified during development; – Erect, demarcate and maintain a temporary barrier with clear signage around the perimeter of any access restricted area, colour coding could be used if appropriate; and – Unauthorised access and development related activity inside access restricted areas is prohibited.	**Contractor**	**As defined**	**Prior to construction**	**ECO**	**Monthly**	**ECO Report**

5.4 Access roads

Impact management outcome: Minimise impact to the environment through the planned and restricted movement of vehicles on site.						
Impact Management Actions	**Implementation**			**Monitoring**		
	Responsible person	Method of implementation	Timeframe for implementation	Responsible person	Frequency	Evidence of compliance
– Access to the servitude and tower positions must be negotiated with the relevant landowner and must fall within the assessed and authorised area; – An access agreement must be formalised and signed by the DPM, Contractor and landowner before commencing with the activities;	**Contractor**		**continuous**	**ECO**	**Monthly**	**ECO Report**

– The access roads to tower positions must be signposted after access has been negotiated and before the commencement of the activities; – All private roads used for access to the servitude must be maintained and upon completion of the works, be left in at least the original condition – All contractors must be made aware of all these access routes. – Any access route deviation from that in the written agreement must be closed and re-vegetated immediately, at the contractor's expense; – Maximum use of both existing servitudes and existing roads must be made to minimize further disturbance through the development of new roads; – In circumstances where private roads must be used, the condition of the said roads must be recorded in accordance with ***section 4.9: photographic record***; prior to use and the condition thereof agreed by the landowner, the DPM, and the contractor; – Access roads in flattish areas must follow fence lines and tree belts to avoid fragmentation of vegetated areas or croplands – Access roads must only be developed on pre-planned and approved roads.						

5.5 Fencing and Gate installation

Impact management outcome: Minimise impact to the environment and ensure safe and controlled access to the site through the erection of fencing and gates where required.

Impact Management Actions	Implementation			Monitoring		
	Responsible person	Method of implementation	Timeframe for implementation	Responsible person	Frequency	Evidence of compliance
– Use existing gates provided to gain access to all parts of the area authorised for development, where possible; – Existing and new gates to be recorded and documented in accordance with **section *4.9: photographic record***; – All gates must be fitted with locks and be kept locked at all times during the development phase, unless otherwise agreed with the landowner; – At points where the line crosses a fence in which there is no suitable gate within the extent of the line servitude, on the instruction of the DPM, a gate must be installed at the approval of the landowner; – Care must be taken that the gates must be so erected that there is a gap of no more than 100 mm between the bottom of the gate and the ground; – Where gates are installed in jackal proof fencing, a suitable reinforced concrete sill must be provided beneath the gate; – Original tension must be maintained in the fence wires; – All gates installed in electrified fencing must be re-electrified; – All demarcation fencing and barriers must be maintained in good working order for the duration of overhead transmission and distribution electricity infrastructure development activities; – Fencing must be erected around the camp, batching plants, hazardous storage areas, and all designated access	**Contractor**	**As defined**	**Prior to construction and continually**	**ECO**	**Monthly**	**ECO Report**

restricted areas, where appropriate and would not cause harm to the sensitive flora; – Any temporary fencing to restrict the movement of life-stock must only be erected with the permission of the land owner. – All fencing must be developed of high quality material bearing the SABS mark; – The use of razor wire as fencing must be avoided; – Fenced areas with gate access must remain locked after hours, during weekends and on holidays if staff is away from site. Site security will be required at all times; – On completion of the development phase all temporary fences are to be removed; – The contractor must ensure that all fence uprights are appropriately removed, ensuring that no uprights are cut at ground level but rather removed completely.						

5.6 Water Supply Management

Impact management outcome: Undertake responsible water usage**.**						
Impact Management Actions	**Implementation**			**Monitoring**		
	Responsible person	Method of implementation	Timeframe for implementation	Responsible person	Frequency	Evidence of compliance
– All abstraction points or bore holes must be registered with the DWS and suitable water meters installed to ensure that the abstracted volumes are measured on a daily basis; – The Contractor must ensure the following: a. The vehicle abstracting water from a river does not enter	**Contractor**	**As defined**	**Throughout construction**	**ECO**	**Monthly**	**ECO Report**

or cross it and does not operate from within the river; b. No damage occurs to the river bed or banks and that the abstraction of water does not entail stream diversion activities; and c. All reasonable measures to limit pollution or sedimentation of the downstream watercourse are implemented. – Ensure water conservation is being practiced by: a. Minimising water use during cleaning of equipment; b. Undertaking regular audits of water systems; and c. Including a discussion on water usage and conservation during environmental awareness training. d. The use of grey water is encouraged.						

5.7 Storm and waste water management

Impact management outcome: Impacts to the environment caused by storm water and wastewater discharges during construction are avoided.

Impact Management Actions	**Implementation**			**Monitoring**		
	Responsible person	Method of implementation	Timeframe for implementation	Responsible person	Frequency	Evidence of compliance
– Runoff from the cement/ concrete batching areas must be strictly controlled, and contaminated water must be collected, stored and either treated or disposed of off-site, at a location approved by the project manager; – All spillage of oil onto concrete surfaces must be controlled by the use of an approved absorbent material and the used absorbent material disposed of at an appropriate waste disposal facility; – Natural storm water runoff not contaminated during the	**Contractor**	**physical**	**Throughout construction**	**ECO**	**Monthly**	**ECO report**

development and clean water can be discharged directly to watercourses and water bodies, subject to the Project Manager's approval and support by the ECO; – Water that has been contaminated with suspended solids, such as soils and silt, may be released into watercourses or water bodies only once all suspended solids have been removed from the water by settling out these solids in settlement ponds. The release of settled water back into the environment must be subject to the Project Manager's approval and support by the ECO.						

5.8 Solid and hazardous waste management

Impact management outcome: Waste is appropriately stored, handled and safely disposed of at a recognised waste facility**.**

Impact Management Actions	**Implementation**			**Monitoring**		
	Responsible person	Method of implementation	Timeframe for implementation	Responsible person	Frequency	Evidence of compliance
– All measures regarding waste management must be undertaken using an integrated waste management approach; – Sufficient, covered waste collection bins (scavenger and weatherproof) must be provided; – A suitably positioned and clearly demarcated waste collection site must be identified and provided; – The waste collection site must be maintained in a clean and orderly manner;	**contractor**	**As defined**	**Throughout construction**	**ECO**	**Monthly**	**Monthly ECO report**

– Waste must be segregated into separate bins and clearly marked for each waste type for recycling and safe disposal; – Staff must be trained in waste segregation; – Bins must be emptied regularly; – General waste produced onsite must be disposed of at registered waste disposal sites/ recycling company; – Hazardous waste must be disposed of at a registered waste disposal site; – Certificates of safe disposal for general, hazardous and recycled waste must be maintained.						

5.9 Protection of watercourses and estuaries

Impact management outcome: Pollution and contamination of the watercourse environment and or estuary erosion are prevented.

Impact Management Actions	**Implementation**			**Monitoring**		
	Responsible person	Method of implementation	Timeframe for implementation	Responsible person	Frequency	Evidence of compliance
– All watercourses must be protected from direct or indirect spills of pollutants such as solid waste, sewage, cement, oils, fuels, chemicals, aggregate tailings, wash and contaminated water or organic material resulting from the Contractor's activities; – In the event of a spill, prompt action must be taken to clear the polluted or affected areas; – Where possible, no development equipment must traverse any seasonal or permanent wetland – No return flow into the estuaries must be allowed and no disturbance of the Estuarine Functional Zone should occur;	**Contractor**	**As defined**	**Throughout construction**	**ECO**	**Monthly**	**ECO Report**

– Development of permanent watercourse or estuary crossing must only be undertaken where no alternative access to tower position is available; – There must not be any impact on the long term morphological dynamics of watercourses or estuaries; – Existing crossing points must be favored over the creation of new crossings (including temporary access) – When working in or near any watercourse or estuary, the following environmental controls and consideration must be taken: a) Water levels during the period of construction; No altering of the bed, banks, course or characteristics of a watercourse b) During the execution of the works, appropriate measures to prevent pollution and contamination of the riparian environment must be implemented e.g. including ensuring that construction equipment is well maintained; c) Where earthwork is being undertaken in close proximity to any watercourse, slopes must be stabilised using suitable materials, i.e. sandbags or geotextile fabric, to prevent sand and rock from entering the channel; and d) Appropriate rehabilitation and re-vegetation measures for the watercourse banks must be implemented timeously. In this regard, the banks should be appropriately and incrementally stabilised as soon as development allows.						

5.10 Vegetation clearing

Impact management outcome: Vegetation clearing is restricted to the authorised development footprint of the proposed infrastructure.

Impact Management Actions	Implementation			Monitoring		
	Responsible person	Method of implementation	Timeframe for implementation	Responsible person	Frequency	Evidence of compliance
General: – Indigenous vegetation which does not interfere with the development must be left undisturbed; – Protected or endangered species may occur on or near the development site. Special care should be taken not to damage such species; – Search, rescue and replanting of all protected and endangered species likely to be damaged during project development must be identified by the relevant specialist and completed prior to any development or clearing; – Permits for removal must be obtained from the Department of Agriculture, Forestry and Fisheries prior to the cutting or clearing of the affected species, and they must be filed; – The Environmental Audit Report must confirm that all identified species have been rescued and replanted and that the location of replanting is compliant with conditions of approvals; – Trees felled due to construction must be documented and form part of the Environmental Audit Report; – Rivers and watercourses must be kept clear of felled trees, vegetation cuttings and debris; – Only a registered pest control operator may apply herbicides on a commercial basis and commercial application must be carried out under the supervision of a registered pest control operator, supervision of a registered	**Contractor**	**As defined**	**Throughout construction**	**ECO**	**Monthly**	**ECO Report**

pest control operator or is appropriately trained; – A daily register must be kept of all relevant details of herbicide usage; – No herbicides must be used in estuaries; – All protected species and sensitive vegetation not removed must be clearly marked and such areas fenced off in accordance to ***Section 5.3: Access restricted areas***. **Servitude:** – Vegetation that does not grow high enough to cause interference with overhead transmission and distribution infrastructures, or cause a fire hazard to any plantation, must not be cut or trimmed unless it is growing in the road access area, and then only at the discretion of the Project Manager; – Where clearing for access purposes is essential, the maximum width to be cleared within the servitude must be in accordance to distance as agreed between the land owner and the EA holder – Alien invasive vegetation must be removed according to a plan (in line with relevant municipal and provincial procedures, guidelines and recommendations) and disposed of at a recognised waste disposal facility; – Vegetation must be trimmed where it is likely to intrude on the minimum vegetation clearance distance (MVCD) or will intrude on this distance before the next scheduled clearance. MVCD is determined from SANS 10280; – Debris resulting from clearing and pruning must be disposed of at a recognised waste disposal facility, unless the landowners wish to retain the cut vegetation; – In the case of the development of new overhead transmission and distribution infrastructures, a one metre "trace-line" must be cut through the vegetation for stringing						

purposes only and no vehicle access must be cleared along the "trace-line". Alternative methods of stringing which limit impact to the environment must always be considered.						

5.11 Protection of fauna

Impact management outcome: Minimise disturbance to fauna.						
Impact Management Actions	**Implementation**			**Monitoring**		
	Responsible person	Method of implementation	Timeframe for implementation	Responsible person	Frequency	Evidence of compliance
– No interference with livestock must occur without the landowner's written consent and with the landowner or a person representing the landowner being present; – The breeding sites of raptors and other wild birds species must be taken into consideration during the planning of the development programme; – Breeding sites must be kept intact and disturbance to breeding birds must be avoided. Special care must be taken where nestlings or fledglings are present; – Nesting sites on existing parallel lines must documented; – Special recommendations of the avian specialist must be adhered to at all times to prevent unnecessary disturbance of birds; – Bird guards and diverters must be installed on the new line as per the recommendations of the specialist; – No poaching must be tolerated under any circumstances. All animal dens in close proximity to the works areas must be marked as Access restricted areas; – No deliberate or intentional killing of fauna is allowed;	**Contractor**	**As defined**	**Throughout construction**	**ECO**	**Monthly**	**ECO Report**

– In areas where snakes are abundant, snake deterrents to be deployed on the pylons to prevent snakes climbing up, being electrocuted and causing power outages; and – No Threatened or Protected species (ToPs) and/or protected fauna as listed according NEMBA (Act No. 10 of 2004) and relevant provincial ordinances may be removed and/or relocated without appropriate authorisations/permits.						

5.12 Protection of heritage resources

Impact management outcome: Minimise impact to heritage resources.

Impact Management Actions	**Implementation**			**Monitoring**		
	Responsible person	Method of implementation	Timeframe for implementation	Responsible person	Frequency	Evidence of compliance
– Identify, demarcate and prevent impact to all known sensitive heritage features on site in accordance with the No-Go procedure in ***Section 5.3: Access restricted areas***; – Carry out general monitoring of excavations for potential fossils, artefacts and material of heritage importance; – All work must cease immediately, if any human remains and/or other archaeological, palaeontological and historical material are uncovered. Such material, if exposed, must be reported to the nearest museum, archaeologist/ palaeontologist (or the South African Police Services), so that a systematic and professional investigation can be undertaken. Sufficient time must be allowed to	**Contractor**	**As defined**	**Throughout construction**	**ECO**	**Monthly**	**ECO Report**

remove/collect such material before development recommences.						

5.13 Safety of the public

Impact management outcome: All precautions are taken to minimise the risk of injury, harm or complaints.

Impact Management Actions	**Implementation**			**Monitoring**		
	Responsible person	Method of implementation	Timeframe for implementation	Responsible person	Frequency	Evidence of compliance
– Identify fire hazards, demarcate and restrict public access to these areas as well as notify the local authority of any potential threats e.g. large brush stockpiles, fuels etc.; – All unattended open excavations must be adequately fenced or demarcated; – Adequate protective measures must be implemented to prevent unauthorised access to and climbing of partly constructed towers and protective scaffolding; – Ensure structures vulnerable to high winds are secured; – Maintain an incidents and complaints register in which all incidents or complaints involving the public are logged.	**Contractor**	**As defined**	**Throughout construction**	**ECO**	**Monthly**	**ECO Report**

5.14 Sanitation

Impact management outcome: Clean and well maintained toilet facilities are available to all staff in an effort to minimise the risk of disease and impact to the environment.

Impact Management Actions	**Implementation**	**Monitoring**

	Responsible person	Method of implementation	Timeframe for implementation	Responsible person	Frequency	Evidence of compliance
– Mobile chemical toilets are installed onsite if no other ablution facilities are available; – The use of ablution facilities and or mobile toilets must be used at all times and no indiscriminate use of the veld for the purposes of ablutions must be permitted under any circumstances; – Where mobile chemical toilets are required, the following must be ensured: a) Toilets are located no closer than 100 m to any watercourse or water body; b) Toilets are secured to the ground to prevent them from toppling due to wind or any other cause; c) No spillage occurs when the toilets are cleaned or emptied and the contents are managed in accordance with the EMPr; d) Toilets have an external closing mechanism and are closed and secured from the outside when not in use to prevent toilet paper from being blown out; e) Toilets are emptied before long weekends and workers holidays, and must be locked after working hours; f) Toilets are serviced regularly and the ECO must inspect toilets to ensure compliance to health standards; – A copy of the waste disposal certificates must be maintained.	**Contractor**	**As defined**	**Throughout construction**	**ECO**	**Monthly**	**ECO Report**

5.15 Prevention of disease

Impact Management outcome: All necessary precautions linked to the spread of disease are taken.						
Impact Management Actions	**Implementation**			**Monitoring**		
	Responsible person	Method of implementation	Timeframe for implementation	Responsible person	Frequency	Evidence of compliance
– Undertake environmentally-friendly pest control in the camp area; – Ensure that the workforce is sensitised to the effects of sexually transmitted diseases, especially HIV AIDS; – The Contractor must ensure that information posters on AIDS are displayed in the Contractor Camp area; – Information and education relating to sexually transmitted diseases to be made available to both construction workers and local community, where applicable; – Free condoms must be made available to all staff on site at central points; – Medical support must be made available; – Provide access to Voluntary HIV Testing and Counselling Services.	**Contractor**	**As defined**	**Throughout construction**	**ECO**	**Monthly**	**ECO Report**

5.16 Emergency procedures

Impact management outcome: Emergency procedures are in place to enable a rapid and effective response to all types of environmental emergencies.

Impact Management Actions	Implementation			Monitoring		
	Responsible person	Method of implementation	Timeframe for implementation	Responsible person	Frequency	Evidence of compliance
– Compile an Emergency Response Action Plan (ERAP) prior to the commencement of the proposed project; – The Emergency Plan must deal with accidents, potential spillages and fires in line with relevant legislation; – All staff must be made aware of emergency procedures as part of environmental awareness training; – The relevant local authority must be made aware of a fire as soon as it starts; – In the event of emergency necessary mitigation measures to contain the spill or leak must be implemented (see ***Hazardous Substances section 5.17***).	**Contractor**	**As defined**	**Throughout construction**	**ECO**	**Monthly**	**ECO Report**

5.17 Hazardous substances

Impact management outcome: Safe storage, handling, use and disposal of hazardous substances.						
Impact Management Actions	**Implementation**			**Monitoring**		
	Responsible person	Method of implementation	Timeframe for implementation	Responsible person	Frequency	Evidence of compliance
– The use and storage of hazardous substances to be minimised and non-hazardous and non-toxic alternatives	**Contractor**	**As defined**	**Throughout construction**	**ECO**	**Monthly**	**ECO Report**

substituted where possible; – All hazardous substances must be stored in suitable containers as defined in the Method Statement; – Containers must be clearly marked to indicate contents, quantities and safety requirements; – All storage areas must be bunded. The bunded area must be of sufficient capacity to contain a spill / leak from the stored containers; – Bunded areas to be suitably lined with a SABS approved liner; – An Alphabetical Hazardous Chemical Substance (HCS) control sheet must be drawn up and kept up to date on a continuous basis; – All hazardous chemicals that will be used on site must have Material Safety Data Sheets (MSDS); – All employees working with HCS must be trained in the safe use of the substance and according to the safety data sheet; – Employees handling hazardous substances / materials must be aware of the potential impacts and follow appropriate safety measures. Appropriate personal protective equipment must be made available; – The Contractor must ensure that diesel and other liquid fuel, oil and hydraulic fluid is stored in appropriate storage tanks or in bowsers; – The tanks/ bowsers must be situated on a smooth impermeable surface (concrete) with a permanent bund. The impermeable lining must extend to the crest of the bund and the volume inside the bund must be 130% of the total capacity of all the storage tanks/ bowsers (110% statutory requirement plus an allowance for rainfall);						

– The floor of the bund must be sloped, draining to an oil separator; – Provision must be made for refueling at the storage area by protecting the soil with an impermeable groundcover. Where dispensing equipment is used, a drip tray must be used to ensure small spills are contained; – All empty externally dirty drums must be stored on a drip tray or within a bunded area; – No unauthorised access into the hazardous substances storage areas must be permitted; – No smoking must be allowed within the vicinity of the hazardous storage areas; – Adequate fire-fighting equipment must be made available at all hazardous storage areas; – Where refueling away from the dedicated refueling station is required, a mobile refueling unit must be used. Appropriate ground protection such as drip trays must be used; – An appropriately sized spill kit kept onsite relevant to the scale of the activity/s involving the use of hazardous substance must be available at all times; – The responsible operator must have the required training to make use of the spill kit in emergency situations; – An appropriate number of spill kits must be available and must be located in all areas where activities are being undertaken; – In the event of a spill, contaminated soil must be collected in containers and stored in a central location and disposed of according to the National Environmental Management: Waste Act 59 of 2008. Refer to ***Section 5.7*** for procedures concerning ***storm and waste water management*** and ***5.8*** for ***solid and hazardous waste management.***						

5.18 Workshop, equipment maintenance and storage

Impact management outcome: Soil, surface water and groundwater contamination is minimised.

Impact Management Actions	**Implementation**			**Monitoring**		
	Responsible person	Method of implementation	Timeframe for implementation	Responsible person	Frequency	Evidence of compliance
– Where possible and practical all maintenance of vehicles and equipment must take place in the workshop area; – During servicing of vehicles or equipment, especially where emergency repairs are effected outside the workshop area, a suitable drip tray must be used to prevent spills onto the soil. The relevant local authority must be made aware of a fire as soon as it starts; – Leaking equipment must be repaired immediately or be removed from site to facilitate repair; – Workshop areas must be monitored for oil and fuel spills; – Appropriately sized spill kit kept onsite relevant to the scale of the activity taking place must be available; – The workshop area must have a bunded concrete slab that is sloped to facilitate runoff into a collection sump or suitable oil / water separator where maintenance work on vehicles and equipment can be performed; – Water drainage from the workshop must be contained and managed in accordance ***Section 5.7: storm and waste water management***.	**Contractor**	**As defined**	**Throughout construction**	**ECO**	**Monthly**	**ECO Report**

5.19 Batching plants

Impact management outcome: Minimise spillages and contamination of soil, surface water and groundwater.

Impact Management Actions	**Implementation**			**Monitoring**		
	Responsible person	Method of implementation	Timeframe for implementation	Responsible person	Frequency	Evidence of compliance
– Concrete mixing must be carried out on an impermeable surface; – Batching plants areas must be fitted with a containment facility for the collection of cement laden water. – Dirty water from the batching plant must be contained to prevent soil and groundwater contamination – Bagged cement must be stored in an appropriate facility and at least 10 m away from any water courses, gullies and drains; – A washout facility must be provided for washing of concrete associated equipment. Water used for washing must be restricted; – Hardened concrete from the washout facility or concrete mixer can either be reused or disposed of at an appropriate licenced disposal facility; – Empty cement bags must be secured with adequate binding material if these will be temporarily stored on site; – Sand and aggregates containing cement must be kept damp to prevent the generation of dust (Refer to ***Section 5.20: Dust emissions***)	**Contractor**	**As defined**	**Throughout construction**	**ECO**	**Monthly**	**ECO Report**

– Any excess sand, stone and cement must be removed or reused from site on completion of construction period and disposed at a registered disposal facility; – Temporary fencing must be erected around batching plants in accordance with ***Section 5.5: Fencing and gate installation***.						

5.20 Dust emissions

Impact management outcome: Dust prevention measures are applied to minimise the generation of dust.

Impact Management Actions	**Implementation**			**Monitoring**		
	Responsible person	Method of implementation	Timeframe for implementation	Responsible person	Frequency	Evidence of compliance
– Take all reasonable measures to minimise the generation of dust as a result of project development activities to the satisfaction of the ECO; – Removal of vegetation must be avoided until such time as soil stripping is required and similarly exposed surfaces must be re- vegetated or stabilised as soon as is practically possible; – Excavation, handling and transport of erodible materials must be avoided under high wind conditions or when a visible dust plume is present; – During high wind conditions, the ECO must evaluate the situation and make recommendations as to whether dust-damping measures are adequate, or whether working will cease altogether until the wind speed drops to an	**Contractor**	**As defined**	**Throughout construction**	**ECO**	**Monthly**	**ECO Report**

acceptable level; – Where possible, soil stockpiles must be located in sheltered areas where they are not exposed to the erosive effects of the wind; – Where erosion of stockpiles becomes a problem, erosion control measures must be implemented at the discretion of the ECO; – Vehicle speeds must not exceed 40 km/h along dust roads or 20 km/h when traversing unconsolidated and non-vegetated areas; – Straw stabilisation must be applied at a rate of one bale/10 m² and harrowed into the top 100 mm of top material, for all completed earthworks; – For significant areas of excavation or exposed ground, dust suppression measures must be used to minimise the spread of dust.						

5.21 Blasting

Impact management outcome: Impact to the environment is minimised through a safe blasting practice.

Impact Management Actions	**Implementation**			**Monitoring**		
	Responsible person	Method of implementation	Timeframe for implementation	Responsible person	Frequency	Evidence of compliance
– Any blasting activity must be conducted by a suitably licensed blasting contractor; and – Notification of surrounding landowners, emergency services site personnel of blasting activity 24 hours prior to such	**Contractor**	**As defined**	**Throughout construction**	**ECO**	**Monthly**	**ECO Report**

activity taking place on Site.						

5.22 Noise

Impact Management outcome: Unnecessary noise is prevented by ensuring that noise from construction activities is mitigated.

Impact Management Actions	**Implementation**			**Monitoring**		
	Responsible person	Method of implementation	Timeframe for implementation	Responsible person	Frequency	Evidence of compliance
– The Contractor must keep noise level within acceptable limits, Restrict the use of sound amplification equipment for communication and emergency only; – All vehicles and machinery must be fitted with appropriate silencing technology and must be properly maintained; – Any complaints received by the Contractor regarding noise must be recorded and communicated. Where possible or applicable, provide transport to and from the site on a daily basis for construction workers; – Develop a Code of Conduct for the construction phase in terms of behaviour of construction staff.Operating hours as determined by the environmental authorisation are adhered to during the development phase. Where not defined, it must be ensured that development activities must still meet the impact management outcome related to noise management.	**Contractor**	**As defined**	**Throughout construction**	**ECO**	**Monthly**	**ECO Report**

5.23 Fire prevention

Impact management outcome: Prevention of uncontrollable fires.						
Impact Management Actions	**Implementation**			**Monitoring**		
	Responsible person	Method of implementation	Timeframe for implementation	Responsible person	Frequency	Evidence of compliance
– Designate smoking areas where the fire hazard could be regarded as insignificant; – Firefighting equipment must be available on all vehicles located on site; – The local Fire Protection Agency (FPA) must be informed of construction activities; – Contact numbers for the FPA and emergency services must be communicated in environmental awareness training and displayed at a central location on site; – Two way swop of contact details between ECO and FPA.	**Contractor**	**As defined**	**Throughout construction**	**ECO**	**Monthly**	**ECO Report**

5.24 Stockpiling and stockpile areas

Impact management outcome: Erosion and sedimentation as a result of stockpiling are reduced.

Impact Management Actions	Implementation			Monitoring		
	Responsible person	Method of implementation	Timeframe for implementation	Responsible person	Frequency	Evidence of compliance
– All material that is excavated during the project development phase (either during piling (if required) or earthworks) must be stored appropriately on site in order to minimise impacts to watercourses, watercourses and water bodies; – All stockpiled material must be maintained and kept clear of weeds and alien vegetation growth by undertaking regular weeding and control methods; – Topsoil stockpiles must not exceed 2 m in height; – During periods of strong winds and heavy rain, the stockpiles must be covered with appropriate material (e.g. cloth, tarpaulin etc.); – Where possible, sandbags (or similar) must be placed at the bases of the stockpiled material in order to prevent erosion of the material.	**Contractor**	**As defined**	**Throughout construction**	**ECO**	**Monthly**	**ECO Report**

5.25 Finalising tower positions

Impact management outcome: No environmental degradation occurs as a result of the survey and pegging operations.

Impact Management Actions	Implementation			Monitoring		
	Responsible	Method of	Timeframe for	Responsible	Frequency	Evidence of

	person	implementation	implementation	person		compliance
– No vegetation clearing must occur during survey and pegging operations; – No new access roads must be developed to facilitate access for survey and pegging purposes; – Project manager, botanical specialist and contractor to agree on final tower positions based on survey within assessed and approved areas; – The surveyor is to demarcate (peg) access roads/tracks in consultation with ECO. No deviations will be allowed without the prior written consent from the ECO.	**Contractor**	**As defined**	**Throughout construction**	**ECO**	**Monthly**	**ECO Report**

5.26 Excavation and Installation of foundations

Impact management outcome: No environmental degradation occurs as a result of excavation or installation of foundations.

Impact Management Actions	**Implementation**			**Monitoring**		
	Responsible person	Method of implementation	Timeframe for implementation	Responsible person	Frequency	Evidence of compliance
– All excess spoil generated during foundation excavation must be disposed of in an appropriate manner and at a recognised disposal site, if not used for backfilling purposes; – Spoil can however be used for landscaping purposes and must be covered with a layer of 150 mm topsoil for rehabilitation purposes; – Management of equipment for excavation purposes must be undertaken in accordance with ***Section 5.18: Workshop equipment maintenance and storage***; and – Hazardous substances spills from equipment must be	**Contractor**	**As defined**	**Throughout construction**	**ECO**	**Monthly**	**ECO Report**

managed in accordance with ***Section 5.17: Hazardous substances***. – Batching of cement to be undertaken in accordance with **Section *5.19 : Batching plants***; – Residual cement must be disposed of in accordance with **Section *5.8: Solid and hazardous waste management***.						

5.27 Assembly and erecting towers

Impact management outcome: No environmental degradation occurs as a result of assembly and erecting of towers.

Impact Management Actions	**Implementation**			**Monitoring**		
	Responsible person	Method of implementation	Timeframe for implementation	Responsible person	Frequency	Evidence of compliance
– Prior to erection, assembled towers and tower sections must be stored on elevated surface (suggest wooden blocks) to minimise damage to the underlying vegetation; – In sensitive areas, tower assembly must take place off-site or away from sensitive positions; – The crane used for tower assembly must be operated in a manner which minimises impact to the environment; – The number of crane trips to each site must be minimised; – Wheeled cranes must be utilised in preference to tracked cranes; – Consideration must be given to erecting towers by helicopter or by hand where it is warranted to limit the extent	**Contractor**	**As defined**	**Throughout construction**	**ECO**	**Monthly**	**ECO Report**

of environmental impact; – Access to tower positions to be undertaken in accordance with access requirements in specified in Section 8.4: Access Roads; – Vegetation clearance to be undertaken in accordance with general vegetation clearance requirements specified in Section 8.10: Vegetation clearing; – No levelling at tower sites must be permitted unless approved by the Development Project Manager or Developer Site Supervisor; – Topsoil must be removed separately from subsoil material and stored for later use during rehabilitation of such tower sites; – Topsoil must be stored in heaps not higher than 1m to prevent destruction of the seed bank within the topsoil; – Excavated slopes must be no greater that 1:3, but where this is unavoidable, appropriate measures must be undertaken to stabilise the slopes; – Fly rock from blasting activity must be minimised and any pieces greater than 150 mm falling beyond the Working Area, must be collected and removed; – Only existing disturbed areas are utilised as spoil areas; – Drainage is provided to control groundwater exit gradient with the spill areas such that migration of fines is kept to a minimum; – Surface water runoff is appropriately channeled through or around spoil areas; – During backfilling operations, care must be taken not to dump the topsoil at the bottom of the foundation and then put spoil on top of that; – The surface of the spoil is appropriately rehabilitated in						

accordance with the requirements specified in Section 5.29: Landscaping and rehabilitation; – The retained topsoil must be spread evenly over areas to be rehabilitated and suitably compacted to effect re-vegetation of such areas to prevent erosion as soon as construction activities on the site is complete. Spreading of topsoil must not be undertaken at the beginning of the dry season.						

5.28 Stringing

Impact management outcome: No environmental degradation occurs as a result of stringing.

Impact Management Actions	**Implementation**			**Monitoring**		
	Responsible person	Method of implementation	Timeframe for implementation	Responsible person	Frequency	Evidence of compliance
– Where possible, previously disturbed areas must be used for the siting of winch and tensioner stations. In all other instances, the siting of the winch and tensioner must avoid Access restricted areas and other sensitive areas; – The winch and tensioner station must be equipped with drip trays in order to contain any fuel, hydraulic fuel or oil spills and leaks; – Refueling of the winch and tensioner stations must be undertaken in accordance with Section 5.17: Hazardous substances;	**Contractor**	**As defined**	**Throughout construction**	**ECO**	**Monthly**	**ECO Report**

– In the case of the development of overhead transmission and distribution infrastructure, a one metre "trace-line" may be cut through the vegetation for stringing purposes only and no vehicle access must be cleared along "trace-lines". Vegetation clearing must be undertaken by hand, using chainsaws and hand held implements, with vegetation being cut off at ground level. No tracked or wheeled mechanised equipment must be used; – Alternative methods of stringing which limit impact to the environment must always be considered e.g. by hand or by using a helicopter; – Where the stringing operation crosses a public or private road or railway line, the necessary scaffolding/ protection measures must be installed to facilitate access. If, for any reason, such access has to be closed for any period(s) during development, the persons affected must be given reasonable notice, in writing; – No services (electrical distribution lines, telephone lines, roads, railways lines, pipelines fences etc.) must be damaged because of stringing operations. Where disruption to services is unavoidable, persons affected must be given reasonable notice, in writing; – Where stringing operations cross cultivated land, damage to crops is restricted to the minimum required to conduct stringing operations, and reasonable notice (10 work days minimum), in writing, must be provided to the landowner; – Necessary scaffolding protection measures must be installed to prevent damage to the structures supporting certain high value agricultural areas such as vineyards, orchards, nurseries.						

5.29 Socio-economic

Impact management outcome: Socio-economic development is enhanced.						
Impact Management Actions	**Implementation**			**Monitoring**		
	Responsible person	Method of implementation	Timeframe for implementation	Responsible person	Frequency	Evidence of compliance
– Develop and implement communication strategies to facilitate public participation; – Develop and implement a collaborative and constructive approach to conflict resolution as part of the external stakeholder engagement process; – Sustain continuous communication and liaison with neighboring owners and residents – Create work and training opportunities for local stakeholders; and – Where feasible, no workers, with the exception of security personnel, must be permitted to stay over-night on the site. This would reduce the risk to local farmers.	**Contractor**	**As defined**	**Throughout construction**	**ECO**	**Monthly**	**ECO Report**

5.30 Temporary closure of site

Impact management outcome: Minimise the risk of environmental impact during periods of site closure greater than five days.		
Impact Management Actions	**Implementation**	**Monitoring**

	Responsible person	Method of implementation	Timeframe for implementation	Responsible person	Frequency	Evidence of compliance
– Bunds must be emptied (where applicable) and need to be undertaken in accordance with the impact management actions included in ***sections 5.17: management of hazardous substances*** and ***5.18 workshop, equipment maintenance and storage***; – Hazardous storage areas must be well ventilated; – Fire extinguishers must be serviced and accessible. Service records to be filed and audited at last service; – Emergency and contact details displayed must be displayed; – Security personnel must be briefed and have the facilities to contact or be contacted by relevant management and emergency personnel; – Night hazards such as reflectors, lighting, traffic signage etc. must have been checked; – Fire hazards identified and the local authority must have been notified of any potential threats e.g. large brush stockpiles, fuels etc.; – Structures vulnerable to high winds must be secured; – Wind and dust mitigation must be implemented; – Cement and materials stores must have been secured; – Toilets must have been emptied and secured; – Refuse bins must have been emptied and secured; – Drip trays must have been emptied and secured.	**Contractor**	**As defined**	**Throughout construction**	**ECO**	**Monthly**	**ECO Report**

5.31 Landscaping and rehabilitation

Impact management outcome: Areas disturbed during the development phase are returned to a state that approximates the original condition.						
Impact Management Actions	**Implementation**			**Monitoring**		
	Responsible person	Method of implementation	Timeframe for implementation	Responsible person	Frequency	Evidence of compliance
– All areas disturbed by construction activities must be subject to landscaping and rehabilitation; All spoil and waste must be disposed to a registered waste site and certificates of disposal provided; – All slopes must be assessed for contouring, and to contour only when the need is identified in accordance with the Conservation of Agricultural Resources Act, No 43 of 1983 – All slopes must be assessed for terracing, and to terrace only when the need is identified in accordance with the Conservation of Agricultural Resources Act, No 43 of 1983; – Berms that have been created must have a slope of 1:4 and be replanted with indigenous species and grasses that approximates the original condition; – Where new access roads have crossed cultivated farmlands, that lands must be rehabilitated by ripping which must be agreed to by the holder of the EA and the landowners; – Rehabilitation of tower sites and access roads outside of farmland; – Indigenous species must be used for with species and/grasses to where it compliments or approximates the original condition; – Stockpiled topsoil must be used for rehabilitation (refer to	**Contractor**	**As defined**	**Throughout construction**	**ECO**	**Monthly**	**ECO Report**

Section ***5.24: Stockpiling and stockpiled areas***); – Stockpiled topsoil must be evenly spread so as to facilitate seeding and minimise loss of soil due to erosion; – Before placing topsoil, all visible weeds from the placement area and from the topsoil must be removed; – Subsoil must be ripped before topsoil is placed; – The rehabilitation must be timed so that rehabilitation can take place at the optimal time for vegetation establishment; – Where impacted through construction related activity, all sloped areas must be stabilised to ensure proper rehabilitation is effected and erosion is controlled ; – Sloped areas stabilised using design structures or vegetation as specified in the design to prevent erosion of embankments. The contract design specifications must be adhered to and implemented strictly; – Spoil can be used for backfilling or landscaping as long as it is covered by a minimum of 150 mm of topsoil. – Where required, re-vegetation including hydro-seeding can be enhanced using a vegetation seed mixture as described below. A mixture of seed can be used provided the mixture is carefully selected to ensure the following: a) Annual and perennial plants are chosen; b) Pioneer species are included; c) Species chosen must be indigenous to the area with the seeds used coming from the area; d) Root systems must have a binding effect on the soil; e) The final product must not cause an ecological imbalance in the area						

6 ACCESS TO THE GENERIC EMPr

Once completed and signed, to allow the public access to the generic EMPr, the holder of the EA must make the EMPr available to the public in accordance with the requirements of regulation 26(h) of the EIA Regulations.

PART B: SECTION 2

7 SITE SPECIFIC INFORMATION AND DECLARATION

7.1 Sub-section 1: contact details and description of the project

7.1.1 Details of the applicant:

Name of applicant:

Tel No: +

Fax No:

Postal Address:

Physical Address:

7.1.2 Details and expertise of the EAP:

Name of EAP:

Tel No:

Fax No:

E-mail address:

Expertise of the EAP (Curriculum Vitae included):.

7.1.3 Project name:

7.1.4 Description of the project:

7.1.5 Project location:

7.16 Preliminary technical specification of the overhead transmission and distribution:

- Length:
- Tower parameters
  - Number and types of towers:
  - Tower spacing (mean and maximum):
  - Tower height (lowest, mean and height):
  - Conductor attachment height (mean)

- Minimum ground clearance

7.2 Sub-section 2: Development footprint site map

This sub-section must include a map of the site sensitivity overlaid with the preliminary infrastructure layout. The sensitivity map must be prepared from the national web based environmental screening tool, when available for compulsory use at: https://screening.environment.gov.za/screeningtool. The sensitivity map shall identify the nature of each sensitive feature e.g. raptor nest, threatened plant species, archaeological site, etc. Sensitivity maps shall identify features both within the planned working area and any

known sensitive features in the surrounding landscape. The overhead transmission and distribution profile shall be illustrated at an appropriate resolution to enable fine scale interrogation. It is recommended that <20 km of overhead transmission and distribution length is illustrated per page in A3 landscape format. Where considered appropriate, photographs of sensitive features in the context of tower positions shall be used.

7.3 Sub-section 3: Declaration

The proponent/applicant or holder of the EA affirms that he/she will abide and comply with the prescribed impact management outcomes and impact management actions as stipulated in part B: section 1 of the generic EMPr and have the understanding that the impact management outcomes and impact management actions are legally binding. The proponent/applicant or holder of the EA affirms that he/she will provide written notice to the CA 14 days prior to the date on which the activity will commence of commencement of construction to facilitate compliance inspections.

Signature Proponent/applicant/ holder of EA Date: 12 April 2020

7.4 Sub-section 4: amendments to site specific information (Part B; section 2)

Should the EA be transferred to a new holder, Part B: Section 2 must be completed by the new holder and submitted with the application for an amendment of the EA in terms of Regulations 29 or 31 of the EIA Regulations, whichever applies. The information submitted for an amendment to an environmental authorisation will be considered to be incomplete should a signed copy of Part B: Section 2 not be submitted. Once approved, Part B: Section 2 forms part of the EMPr for the development and the EMPr becomes legally binding to the new EA holder.

Mitigation	Condition of Approval	Included in EMPr
Agriculture		
Implementation of proper erosion control, and drainage on the access road and maintenance tracks underneath the powerline		✓
Dust control on the access road during construction.		✓
A designated area for refuelling must be constructed with an impervious floor and low wall that will keep the spillage inside. Any spillage must be cleaned with absorbent material as soon as possible and disposed into clearly marked containers. Where spillage takes place, contaminated soil must be excavated and replaced with unpolluted soil. The contaminated soil should be collected by a licenced landfill contractor.		✓
Ensure that most infrastructure features are erected on transformed or non-arable land. Implement stormwater management as an integral part of planning and as a guideline for the positioning of structures. Use existing roads and conservation structures to the maximum in the planning and operation phases. Rehabilitate disturbed areas as soon as possible after construction.	Already mitigated with the design of the preferred layout.	
Erosion and sediment control with proper water run-off control planning.		✓
Appropriate handling and storage of chemicals and hazardous substances and waste should be done.		✓
When spillage accidently takes place, it should be removed and replaced with unpolluted soil. The clean soil can be sourced from excavations nearby. The polluted soil must be piled at a temporary storage facility with a firm waterproof base and is protected from inflow of storm water. It must have an effective drainage system to a waterproof spillage collection area. Contaminated soil must be disposed of at a hazardous waste storage facility.		✓
Clear trees and bushes selectively, leaving grass un-disturbed. Use mechanised machinery when installing posts to eliminate need for foundations. Construct on alternate strips to combat possible erosion.		✓
Establish structures on the contour. Use grass strips to regulate flow speed		✓
Ecology		
Restrict impact to development footprint only and limit disturbance spreading into surrounding areas.		✓
As far as possible, locate infrastructure within areas that have been previously disturbed or in areas with lower sensitivity scores.		✓
Avoid sensitive features and habitats when locating infrastructure		✓
Cross streams and other linear features at right angles, where possible, and also near their end-points or where there are natural breaks in the feature.		✓
Compile a Rehabilitation Plan		✓
.A detailed pre-construction walk-through survey will be required during a favourable season to locate any additional individuals of protected plants. This survey must cover the footprint of all approved infrastructure, including internal access roads.	✓	
Plants lost to the development can be rescued and planted in appropriate places in rehabilitation areas. This will reduce the irreplaceable loss of resources as well as the cumulative effect.		✓
A Plant Rescue Plan must be compiled to be approved by the appropriate authorities	✓	
Undertake dust fall-out monitoring and manage, where necessary	✓	
Compile and implement an alien management plan, which highlights control priorities and areas and provides a programme for long-term control. This should include any areas within proximity to the project that may be affected by the project, or that could have an influence on invasion by alien invasive plants into the property.	✓	
Social		
Where reasonable and practical, the proponent should appoint local contractors and implement a 'locals first' policy, especially for semi and low-skilled job categories. However, due to the low skills levels in the area, the majority of skilled posts are likely to be filled by people from outside the area.		✓

Before the construction phase commences the proponent should meet with representatives from the KGLM to establish the existence of a skills database for the area. If such as database exists it should be made available to the contractors appointed for the construction phase.		✓
Where feasible, efforts should be made to employ local contactors that are compliant with Broad Based Black Economic Empowerment (BBBEE) criteria;		✓
The local authorities, community representatives, and organisations on the interested and affected party database should be informed of the final decision regarding the project and the potential job opportunities for locals and the employment procedures that the proponent intends following for the construction phase of the project.		✓
Where feasible, training and skills development programmes for locals should be initiated prior to the initiation of the construction phase		✓
The recruitment selection process should seek to promote gender equality and the employment of women wherever possible.		✓
The KGLM, in conjunction with the local business sector and representatives from the local hospitality industry, should identify strategies aimed at maximising the potential benefits associated with the project.		✓
Where possible, the proponent should make it a requirement for contractors to implement a 'locals first' policy for construction jobs, specifically for semi and low-skilled job categories;		✓
The proponent should consider the option of establishing a Monitoring Forum (MF) in order to monitor the construction phase and the implementation of the recommended mitigation measures. The MF should be established before the construction phase commences, and should include key stakeholders, including representatives from local communities, local KGLM Councillor for Ward 8, farmers and the contractor(s). The MF should also be briefed on the potential risks to the local community associated with construction workers;		✓
The proponent and the contractor(s) should, in consultation with representatives from the MF, develop a code of conduct for the construction phase. The code should identify which types of behaviour and activities are not acceptable. Construction workers in breach of the code should be dismissed. All dismissals must comply with the South African labour legislation;		✓
The proponent and the contractor should implement an HIV/AIDS awareness programme for all construction workers at the outset of the construction phase;		✓
The construction area should be fenced off before construction commences and no workers should be permitted to leave the fenced off area;		✓
The contractor should provide transport for workers to and from the site on a daily basis. This will enable the contactor to effectively manage and monitor the movement of construction workers on and off the site.		✓
Where necessary, the contractors should make the necessary arrangements to enable low and semi-skilled workers from outside the area to return home over weekends and/ or on a regular basis. This would reduce the risk posed to local family structures and social networks;		✓
The contractor must ensure that all construction workers from outside the area are transported back to their place of residence within 2 days after their contract coming to an end;		✓
It is recommended that no construction workers, with the exception of security personnel, should be permitted to stay over-night on the site.	✓	
The proponent should implement a policy that no employment will be available at the gate.		✓
The construction area should be fenced off prior to the commencement of the construction phase. The movement of construction workers on the site should be confined to the fenced off area;	✓	
The proponent must enter into an agreement with the local farmers in the area whereby damages to farm property etc. during the construction phase will be compensated for. The agreement should be signed before the construction phase commences;		✓
Traffic and activities should be strictly contained within designated areas		✓
Strict traffic speed limits must be enforced on the farm		✓
All farm gates must be closed after passing through		✓
Contractors appointed by the proponent should provide daily transport for low and semi-skilled workers to and from the site. This would reduce the potential risk of trespassing on the remainder of the farm and adjacent properties		✓

The proponent should hold contractors liable for compensating farmers and communities in full for any stock losses and/or damage to farm infrastructure that can be linked to construction workers. This should be contained in the Code of Conduct to be signed between the proponent, the contractors and neighbouring landowners. The agreement should also cover loses and costs associated with fires caused by construction workers or construction related activities (see below)		✓
The Environmental Management Plan (EMP) must outline procedures for managing and storing waste on site, specifically plastic waste that poses a threat to livestock if ingested		✓
Contractors appointed by the proponent must ensure that all workers are informed at the outset of the construction phase of the conditions contained on the Code of Conduct, specifically consequences of stock theft and trespassing on adjacent farms.		✓
Contractors appointed by the proponent must ensure that construction workers who are found guilty of stealing livestock and/or damaging farm infrastructure are dismissed and charged. This should be contained in the Code of Conduct. All dismissals must be in accordance with South African labour legislation		✓
Contractor should ensure that open fires on the site for cooking or heating are not allowed except in designated areas;		✓
Smoking on site should be confined to designated areas;		✓
Contractor should provide adequate fire-fighting equipment on-site, including a fire fighting vehicle;		✓
Contractor to provide fire-fighting training to selected construction staff		✓
The movement of heavy vehicles associated with the construction phase should be timed to avoid times of the week, such as weekends, when the volume of traffic travelling along the N14 may be higher;	Already mitigated with the design of the preferred layout	
Dust suppression measures must be implemented on un-surfaced roads, such as wetting on a regular basis and ensuring that vehicles used to transport sand and building materials are fitted with tarpaulins or covers.		✓
All vehicles must be road-worthy and drivers must be qualified and made aware of the potential road safety issues and need for strict speed limits		✓
An Environmental Control Officer (ECO) should be appointed to monitor the establishment phase of the construction phase;	✓	
All areas disturbed by construction related activities, such as access roads on the site, construction platforms, workshop area etc., should be rehabilitated at the end of the construction phase		✓
The implementation of a rehabilitation programme should be included in the terms of reference for the contractor/s appointed		✓
The implementation of the Rehabilitation Programme should be monitored by the ECO		✓
Implement a skills development and training programme aimed at maximising the number of employment opportunities for local community members; Maximise opportunities for local content, procurement and community shareholding		✓
The KGLM should liaise with the proponents of other renewable energy projects in the area to investigate how best the Community Trusts can be established and managed so as to promote and support local, socio-economic development in the region as a whole.		✓
The KGLM should be consulted as to the structure and identification of potential trustees to sit on the Trust. The key departments in the KGLM that should be consulted include the Municipal Managers Office, IDP Manager and LED Manager		✓
Clear criteria for identifying and funding community projects and initiatives in the area should be identified. The criteria should be aimed at maximising the benefits for the community as a whole and not individuals within the community;		✓
Strict financial management controls, including annual audits, should be instituted to manage the funds generated for the Community Trust from the renewable energy facilities and their associated infrastructure.		✓
The proponent should ensure that retrenchment packages are provided for all staff retrenched when the plant is decommissioned.		✓
All structures and infrastructure associated with the proposed facility should be dismantled and transported off-site on decommissioning		✓
Revenue generated from the sale of scrap metal during decommissioning should be allocated to funding closure and rehabilitation of disturbed areas.		✓

The Northern Cape Provincial Government, in consultation with the ZFMDM, KGLM and the proponents involved in the development of renewable energy projects in the GKLM, should consider establishing a Development Forum to co-ordinate and manage the development and operation of renewable energy projects in the area with the specific aim of mitigating potential negative impacts and enhancing opportunities. This would include identifying key needs, including capacity of existing services, accommodation and housing and the implementation of an accredited training and skills development programmes aimed at maximising the opportunities for local workers to be employed during the construction and operational phases of the various proposed projects. These issues should be addressed in the Integrated Development Planning process undertaken by the KGLM and ZFMDM.		✓
Freshwater Ecology		
No infrastructure to be planned in any watercourse to avoid erosion as well as potential damage to infrastructure during surface flooding. Infrastructure may however straddle watercourses.	✓	
Buffer zones for pans and the pans themselves are no-go zones	Already mitigated with the design of the preferred alignment	
Minimise alteration to existing drainage networks as far as possible, avoiding leveling or infilling as this will alter flow paths and cause erosion;		✓
Rainwater collection tanks should be installed on building roofs in order to reduce the risk of channeled flows from gutters.		✓
Consider the use of materials for parking areas that allow greater water infiltration rates such as gravel		✓
Should stormwater need to be discharged into a drainage line from any surface, methods of energy dissipation such as stilling basins should be employed to reduce flow velocities entering the watercourse		✓
Only slash or trim vegetation where it is necessary		✓
Clear vegetation outside of major bird breeding seasons		✓
Temporarily fence no-go and sensitive areas along their buffers with single-strand wire fencing, not danger tape. The aim is to exclude easy access by people and vehicles, but still allow the movement of fauna;		✓
Where vehicle access and work within a watercourse is unavoidable, such as the construction of a road crossing, then demarcate the access, parking and lay down areas using temporary fencing		✓
Where excessive damage has occurred to the watercourse bed, banks or riparian zone, this must be rehabilitated immediately under the guidance of an aquatic specialist.		✓
Limit disturbance to soil and vegetation as far as possible to reduce the risk of erosion.		✓
Establish sediment traps (e.g. silt fences or erosion berms) on areas prone to erosion. Although rainfall is an unlikely event, it must be planned for. Allowance must be made to clear sediment from the traps if erosion occurs during the construction period.		✓
If active erosion results in the formation of gullies, these areas must be infilled with topsoil and covered with hessian or a geotextile (e.g. hessian sheets or geotextiles) prior to revegetation.		✓
Where sedimentation downstream occurs as a direct result of construction activities this must be assessed and manual removal (using spades) under the supervision of a freshwater ecologist or environmental site officer may be recommended.		✓
Vehicle parking and refueling areas must be located > 50m from the edge of watercourses, and be clearly defined		✓
No refueling or vehicle maintenance should take place within 500 m of a watercourse.		✓
Any fuel storage areas must be bunded to prevent spills from spreading if they occur. Waste collection and removal must be arranged on a regular basis, and allowance must be made for conducting a litter clean-up for up to 100m downstream and upstream of the watercourses at the development site.		✓
If spills occur (e.g. oil or hydraulic fluid) there must be a procedure for the containment and management thereof;		✓
Any waste construction materials must be disposed of responsibly, such as at the local landfill site;		✓
Human waste should be stored in conservancy tanks kept well away from any watercourses;		✓

The sensitive features within the powerline corridors should be demarcated as no go areas prior to construction	✓	
Visual		
Light spillage reduction management should be implemented		✓
Dust management during the lifetime of the project.		✓
The laydown area should be sited away from the N14 road as well as the viticulture areas, and preferably not located on portions of the site that have local prominence		✓
Dust management during the lifetime of the project.		✓
Adopt responsible construction practices aimed at containing the construction activities to specifically demarcated areas thereby limiting the removal of natural vegetation to the minimum.		✓
Limit access to the construction site to existing access roads.		✓
Rehabilitate all disturbed areas to acceptable visual standards as soon as possible after construction is complete in each area.		✓
Construction should not take place at night-time.		✓
Topsoil from the footprints of the pylon structures should be stockpiled for rehabilitation and restoration purposes.		✓
If very dry conditions prevail and dust becomes a nuisance, water should be sprayed on the road surface (or implement another suitable mitigation to reduce wind-blown dust).		✓
Strict litter control.		✓
Temporary roads should be well marked and should only cross drainage lines on areas identified as permanent road features where erosion and soil loss management can be contained.		✓
Signage on the N14 should be moderated		✓
All buildings should be painted a grey-brown colour.		✓
Fencing should be simple, diamond shaped (to catch wind-blown litter) and be transparent in appearance. The fences should be checked on a monthly basis for the collection of litter caught on the fence.		✓
Palaeontology		
Should any substantial fossil remains (*e.g.* mammalian bones and teeth) be encountered during construction, however, these should be safeguarded, preferably *in situ*, and reported by the ECO to SAHRA, *i.e.* The South African Heritage Resources Authority, as soon as possible (Contact details: SAHRA. 111 Harrington Street, Cape Town. PO Box 4637, Cape Town 8000, South Africa. Phone: +27 (0)21 462 4502. Fax: +27 (0)21 462 4509. Web: www.sahra.org.za). This so that appropriate action can be taken by a professional palaeontologist, at the developer's expense. Mitigation would normally involve the scientific recording and judicious sampling or collection of fossil material as well as associated geological data (*e.g.* stratigraphy, sedimentology, taphonomy) by a professional palaeontologist.	✓	
A Chance Fossil Finds Procedure must form part of the EMPr		✓
Archaeology		
Archaeological resources identified for protection must be permanently fenced		✓
If excavations and earthmoving activities expose significant archaeological or heritage resources, such activities must stop and SAHRA must be notified immediately.		✓
If exposed during development, archaeological resources must be dealt with in accordance with the National Heritage Resources Act (No. 25 of 1999) and at the expense of the developer.	✓	
In the event of exposing human remains during construction, the matter will fall into the domain of the South African Heritage Resources Agency and will require a professional archaeologist to undertake mitigation if needed. Such work will also be at the expense of the developer	✓	

PART C

8 SITE SPECIFIC ENVIRONMENTAL ATTRIBUTES

If any specific environmental sensitivities/attributes are present on the site which require more specific impact management outcomes and impact management actions, not included in the pre-approved generic EMPr template, to manage impacts, those impact management outcomes and actions must be included in this section. These specific management controls must be referenced spatially, and must include impact management outcomes and impact management actions. The management controls including impact management outcomes and impact management actions must be presented in the format of the pre-approved generic EMPr template. This applies only to additional impact management outcomes and impact management actions that are necessary.

If Part C is applicable to the development as authorised in the EA, it is required to be submitted to the CA together with the BAR or EIAR, for consideration of, and decision on, the application for EA. The information in this section must be prepared by an EAP and the name and expertise of the EAP, including the curriculum vitae are to be included. Once approved, Part C forms part of the EMPr for the site and is legally binding.

This section will **not be required** should the site contain no specific environmental sensitivities or attributes.

- **No formal roads may be constructed under the powerlines (jeep track access only)**
- **No pylons to be positioned within 32m of a watercourse**
- **No structures within 32m of a watercourse**

APPENDIX 1: METHOD STATEMENTS

To be prepared by the contractor prior to commencement of the activity. The method statements are **not required** to be submitted to the CA.

GENERIC ENVIRONMENTAL MANAGEMENT PROGRAMME (EMPr) FOR THE DEVELOPMENT AND EXPANSION OF SUBSTATION INFRASTRUCTURE FOR THE TRANSMISSION AND DISTRIBUTION OF ELECTRICITY

environmental affairs
Department:
Environmental Affairs
REPUBLIC OF SOUTH AFRICA

TABLE OF CONTENTS

List of tables

INTRODUCTION

1. Background

The National Environmental Management Act, 1998 (Act No. 107 of 1998) (NEMA) requires that an environmental management programme (EMPr) be submitted where an environmental impact assessment (EIA) has been identified as the environmental instrument to be utilised as the basis for a decision on an application for environmental authorisation (EA). The content of an EMPr must either contain the information set out in Appendix 4 of the Environmental Impact Assessment Regulations, 2014, as amended (EIA Regulations) or must be a generic EMPr relevant to an application as identified and gazetted by the Minister in a government notice. Once the Minister has identified, through a government notice that a generic EMPr is relevant to an application for EA, that generic EMPr must be applied by all parties involved in the EA process, including but not limited to the applicant and the competent authority (CA).

2. Purpose

This document constitutes a generic EMPr relevant to applications for the development or expansion of substation infrastructure for the transmission and distribution of electricity, and all listed and specified activities necessary for the realisation of such infrastructure.

3. Objective

The objective of this generic EMPr is to prescribe and pre-approve generally accepted impact management outcomes and impact management actions, which can commonly and repeatedly be used for the avoidance, management and mitigation of impacts and risks associated with the development or expansion of substation infrastructure for the transmission and distribution of electricity. The use of a generic EMPr is intended to reduce the need to prepare and review individual EMPrs for applications of a similar nature.

4. Scope

The scope of this generic EMPr applies to the development or expansion of substation infrastructure for the transmission and distribution of electricity requiring EA in terms of NEMA. This generic EMPr applies to activities requiring EA, mainly activity 11 and 47 of the Environmental Impact Assessment Regulations Listing Notice 1 of 2014, as amended, and activity 9 of the Environmental Impact Assessment Regulations Listing Notice 2 of 2014, as amended, and all associated listed or specified activities necessary for the realization of such infrastructure.

5. Structure of this document

This document is structured in three parts with an Appendix as indicated in the table below:

Part	Section	Heading	Content
A		Provides general guidance and information and is **not legally binding**	Definitions, acronyms, roles & responsibilities and documentation and reporting.
B	1	Pre-approved generic EMPr template	Contains generally accepted impact management outcomes and impact management actions required for the avoidance, management and mitigation of impacts and risks associated with the development or expansion of substation infrastructure for the transmission and distribution of electricity, which are presented in the form of a template that has been pre-approved. The template in this section is to be completed by the contractor, with each completed page signed and dated by the holder of the EA prior to commencement of the activity. Where an impact management outcome is not relevant, the words "not applicable" can be inserted in the template under the "responsible persons" column. Once completed and signed, the template represents the EMPr for the activity approved by the CA and is legally binding. The template **is not required** to be submitted to the CA as once the generic EMPr is gazetted for implementation, it has been approved by the CA. To allow interested and affected parties access to the pre-approved EMPr template for consideration through the decision-making process, the EAP on behalf of the applicant /proponent must make the hard copy of this EMPr available at a public location and where the applicant has a website, the EMPr should also be made available on such publicly accessible website.
	2	Site specific information	Contains preliminary infrastructure layout and a declaration that the applicant/holder of the EA

Part	Section	Heading	Content
			will comply with the pre-approved generic EMPr template contained in Part B: Section 1, and understands that the impact management outcomes and impact management actions are **legally binding**. The preliminary infrastructure layout must be finalized to inform the final EMPr that is to be submitted with the basic assessment report (BAR) or environmental impact assessment report (EIAR), ensuring that all impact management outcomes and impact management actions have been either pre-approved or approved in terms of Part C. This section **must be** submitted to the CA together with the final BAR or EIAR. The information submitted to the CA will be considered to be incomplete should a signed copy of Part B: section 2 not be submitted. Once approved, this Section forms part of the EMPr for the development and is legally binding.
C		Site specific sensitivities/ attributes	If any specific environmental sensitivities/ attributes are present on the site which require site specific impact management outcomes and impact management actions, not included in the pre-approved generic EMPr, to manage impacts, these specific impact management outcomes and impact management actions must be included in this section. These specific environmental attributes must be referenced spatially and impact management outcomes and impact management actions must be provided. These specific impact management outcomes and impact management actions must be presented in the format of the pre-approved EMPr template (Part B: section 1) This section will not be required should the site contain no specific environmental sensitivities or attributes. However, if Part C is applicable to the site, it **is required** to be submitted together with the BAR or EIAR, for consideration of, and decision on, the application for EA. The

Part	Section	Heading	Content
			information in this section must be prepared by an EAP and must contain his/her name and expertise including a curriculum vitae. Once approved, Part C forms part of the EMPr for the site and is legally binding. This section applies only **to additional** impact management outcomes and impact management actions that are necessary for the avoidance, management and mitigation of impacts and risks associated with the specific development or expansion and which are not already included in Part B: section 1.
Appendix 1			Contains the method statements to be prepared prior to commencement of the activity. The method statements are **not required** to be submitted to the competent authority.

6. Completion of part B: section 1: the pre-approved generic EMPr template

The template is to be completed prior to commencement of the activity, by providing the following information for each environmental impact management action:

- For implementation
  - a 'responsible person',
  - a method for implementation,
  - a timeframe for implementation
- For monitoring
  - a responsible person
  - frequency
  - evidence of compliance.

The completed template must be signed and dated by the holder of the EA prior to commencement of the activity. The method statements prepared and agreed to by the holder of the EA must be appended to the template as Appendix 1. Each method statement must be signed and dated on each page by the holder of the EA. This template once signed and dated is legally binding. The holder of the EA will remain responsible for its implementation.

7. Amendments of the impact management outcomes and impact management actions

Once the activity has commenced, a holder of an EA may make amendments to the impact management outcomes and impact management actions in the following manner:

- Amendment of the impact management outcomes: in line with the process contemplated in Regulation 37 of the EIA Regulations; and
- Amendment of the impact management actions: in line with the process contemplated in Regulation 36 of the EIA Regulations.

8. Documents to be submitted as part of part B: section 2 site specific information and declaration

Part B: Section 2 has three distinct sub-sections. The first and third sub-sections are in a template format. Sub-section two requires a map to be produced.

Sub-section 1 contains the project name, the applicant's name and contact details, the site information, which includes coordinates of the property or farm in which the proposed substation infrastructure is proposed as well as the 21-digit Surveyor General code of each cadastral land parcel and, where available, the farm name.

Sub-section 2 is to be prepared by an EAP and must contain his/her name and expertise including a curriculum vitae. This sub-section must include a map of the site sensitivity overlaid with the preliminary infrastructure layout using the national web based environmental screening tool, when available for compulsory use at: https://screening.environment.gov.za/screeningtool. The sensitivity map shall identify the nature of each sensitive feature e.g. threatened plant species, archaeological site, etc. Sensitivity maps shall identify features both within the planned working area and any known sensitive features and within 50 m from the development footprint.

Sub-section 3 is the declaration that the applicant (s)/proponent (s) or holder of the EA in the case of a change of ownership must complete which confirms that the applicant/EA holder will comply with the pre-approved 'generic EMPr' template in Section 1 and understands that the impact management outcomes and impact management actions are legally binding.

(a) Amendments to Part B: Section 2 – site specific information and declaration

Should the EA be transferred, Part B: Section 2 must be completed by the new applicant/proponent and submitted with the application for an amendment of the EA in terms of regulations 29 or 31 of the EIA Regulations, whichever applies. The information submitted as part of such an application for an amendment to an EA will be considered to be incomplete should a signed copy of Part B: Section 2 not be submitted. Once approved, Part B: Section 2 forms part of the EMPr for the development and the EMPr becomes legally binding to the new EA holder.

PART A – GENERAL INFORMATION

1. DEFINITIONS

In this EMPr any word or expression to which a meaning has been assigned in the NEMA or EIA Regulations has that meaning, and unless the context requires otherwise –

"clearing" means the clearing and removal of vegetation, whether partially or in whole, including trees and shrubs, as specified;

"construction camp" is the area designated for key construction infrastructure and services, including but not limited to offices, overnight vehicle parking areas, stores, the workshop, stockpile and lay down areas, hazardous storage areas (including fuels), the batching plant (if one is located at the construction camp), designated access routes, equipment cleaning areas and the placement of staff accommodation, cooking and ablution facilities, waste and wastewater management;

"contractor" - The Contractor has overall responsibility for ensuring that all work, activities, and actions linked to the delivery of the contract, are in line with the Environmental Management Programme and that Method Statements are implemented as described.

"**hazardous substance**" is a substance governed by the Hazardous Substances Act, 1973 (Act No. 15 of 1973) as well as the Hazardous Chemical and Substances Regulations, 1995;

"method statement" means a written submission by the Contractor to the Project Manager in response to this EMPr or a request by the Project Manager and ECO. The method statement must set out the equipment, materials, labour and method(s) the Contractor proposes using to carry out an activity identified by the Project Manager when requesting the Method Statement. This must be done in such detail that the Project Manager and ECO is able to assess whether the Contractor's proposal is in accordance with this specification and/or will produce results in accordance with this specification;

The method statement must cover as a minimum applicable details with regard to:

(i) Construction procedures;
(ii) Plant, materials and equipment to be used;
(iii) Transporting the equipment to and from site;
(iv) How the plant/ material/ equipment will be moved while on site;
(v) How and where the plant/ material/ equipment will be stored;
(vi) The containment (or action to be taken if containment is not possible) of leaks or spills of any liquid or material that may occur;
(vii) Timing and location of activities;
(viii) Compliance/ non-compliance; and
(ix) Any other information deemed necessary by the Project Manager.

"slope" means the inclination of a surface expressed as one unit of rise or fall for so many horizontal units;

"solid waste" means all solid waste, including construction debris, hazardous waste, excess cement/ concrete, wrapping materials, timber, cans, drums, wire, nails, food and domestic waste (e.g. plastic packets and wrappers);

"spoil" means excavated material which is unsuitable for use as material in the construction works or is material which is surplus to the requirements of the construction works;

"topsoil" means a varying depth (up to 300 mm) of the soil profile irrespective of the fertility, appearance, structure, agricultural potential, fertility and composition of the soil;

"works" means the works to be executed in terms of the Contract

2. ACRONYMS and ABBREVIATIONS

CA	Competent Authority
cEO	Contractors Environmental Officer
dEO	Developer Environmental Officer
DPM	Developer Project Manager
DSS	Developer Site Supervisor
EAR	Environmental Audit Report
ECA	Environmental Conservation Act No. 73 of 1989
ECO	Environmental Control Officer
EA	Environmental Authorisation
EIA	Environmental Impact Assessment
ERAP	Emergency Response Action Plan
EMPr	Environmental Management Programme Report
EAP	Environmental Assessment Practitioner
FPA	Fire Protection Agency
HCS	Hazardous chemical Substance
NEMA	National Environmental Management Act, 1998 (Act No. 107 of 1998)
NEMBA	National Environmental Management: Biodiversity Act ,2004 (Act No. 10 of 2004)
NEMWA	National Environmental Management: Waste Act, 2008 (Act No. 59 of 2008)
MSDS	Material Safety Data Sheet
RI&AP's	Registered Interested and affected parties

3. ROLES AND RESPONSIBILITIES FOR ENVIRONMENTAL MANAGEMENT PROGRAMME (EMPr) IMPLEMENTATION

The effective implementation of this generic EMPr is dependent on established and clear roles, responsibilities and reporting lines within an institutional framework. This section of the EMPr gives guidance to the various environmental roles and reporting lines, however, project specific requirements will ultimately determine the need for the appointment of specific person(s) to undertake specific roles and or responsibilities. As such, it must be noted that in the event that no specific person, for example, an environmental control officer (ECO) is appointed, the holder of the EA remains responsible for ensuring that the duties indicated in this document for action by the ECO are undertaken.

Table 1: *Guide to roles and responsibilities for implementation of an EMPr*

Responsible Person(s)	**Role and Responsibilities**
Developer's Project Manager (DPM)	<u>Role</u> The Project Developer is accountable for ensuring compliance with the EMPr and any conditions of approval from the competent authority (CA). Where required, an environmental control officer (ECO) must be contracted by the Project Developer to objectively monitor the implementation of the EMPr according to relevant environmental legislation, and the conditions of the environmental authorisation (EA). The Project Developer is further responsible for providing and giving mandate to enable the ECO to perform responsibilities, and he must ensure that the ECO is integrated as part of the project team while remaining independent. <u>Responsibilities</u> - Be fully conversant with the conditions of the EA; - Ensure that all stipulations within the EMPr are communicated and adhered to by the Developer and its Contractor(s); - Issuing of site instructions to the Contractor for corrective actions required; - Monitor the implementation of the EMPr throughout the project by means of site inspections and meetings. Overall management of the project and EMPr implementation; and - Ensure that periodic environmental performance audits are undertaken on the project implementation.

Responsible Person(s)	Role and Responsibilities
Developer Site Supervisor (DSS)	Role The DSS reports directly to the DPM, oversees site works, liaises with the contractor(s) and the ECO. The DSS is responsible for the day to day implementation of the EMPr and for ensuring the compliance of all contractors with the conditions and requirements stipulated in the EMPr. Responsibilities - Ensure that all contractors identify a contractor's Environmental Officer (cEO); - Must be fully conversant with the conditions of the EA. Oversees site works, liaison with Contractor, DPM and ECO; - Must ensure that all landowners have the relevant contact details of the site staff, ECO and cEO; - Issuing of site instructions to the Contractor for corrective actions required; - Will issue all non-compliances to contractors; and - Ratify the Monthly Environmental Report.
Environmental Control Officer (ECO)	Role The ECO should have appropriate training and experience in the implementation of environmental management specifications. The primary role of the ECO is to act as an independent quality controller and monitoring agent regarding all environmental concerns and associated environmental impacts. In this respect, the ECO is to conduct periodic site inspections, attend regular site meetings, pre-empt problems and suggest mitigation and be available to advise on incidental issues that arise. The ECO is also required to conduct compliance audits, verifying the monitoring reports submitted by the cEO. The ECO provides feedback to the DSS and Project Manager regarding all environmental matters. The Contractor, cEO and dEO are answerable to the Environmental Control Officer for non-compliance with the Performance Specifications as set out in the EA and EMPr. The ECO provides feedback to the DSS and Project Manager, who in turn reports back to the Contractor and potential and Registered Interested &Affected Parties' (RI&AP's), as required. Issues of non-compliance raised by the ECO must be taken up by the Project Manager, and resolved with the Contractor as per the conditions of his contract. Decisions regarding environmental procedures, specifications and requirements which have a cost implication (i.e. those that are deemed to be a

Responsible Person(s)	Role and Responsibilities
	variation, not allowed for in the Performance Specification) must be endorsed by the Project Manager. The ECO must also, as specified by the EA, report to the relevant CA as and when required. <u>Responsibilities</u> The responsibilities of the ECO will include the following: - Be aware of the findings and conclusions of all EA related to the development; - Be familiar with the recommendations and mitigation measures of this EMPr; - Be conversant with relevant environmental legislation, policies and procedures, and ensure compliance with them; - Undertake regular and comprehensive site inspections / audits of the construction site according to the generic EMPr and applicable licenses in order to monitor compliance as required; - Educate the construction team about the management measures contained in the EMPr and environmental licenses; - Compilation and administration of an environmental monitoring plan to ensure that the environmental management measures are implemented and are effective; - Monitoring the performance of the Contractors and ensuring compliance with the EMPr and associated Method Statements; - In consultation with the Developer Site Supervisor order the removal of person(s) and/or equipment which are in contravention of the specifications of the EMPr and/or environmental licenses; - Liaison between the DPM, Contractors, authorities and other lead stakeholders on all environmental concerns; - Compile a regular environmental audit report highlighting any non-compliance issues as well as satisfactory or exceptional compliance with the EMPr; - Validating the regular site inspection reports, which are to be prepared by the contractor Environmental Officer (cEO); - Checking the cEO's record of environmental incidents (spills, impacts, legal transgressions etc.) as well as corrective and preventive actions taken; - Checking the cEO's public complaints register in which all complaints are recorded, as well as action taken;

Responsible Person(s)	Role and Responsibilities
	- Assisting in the resolution of conflicts; - Facilitate training for all personnel on the site – this may range from carrying out the training, to reviewing the training programmes of the Contractor; - In case of non-compliances, the ECO must first communicate this to the Senior Site Supervisor, who has the power to ensure this matter is addressed. Should no action or insufficient action be taken, the ECO may report this matter to the authorities as non-compliance; - Maintenance, update and review of the EMPr; - Communication of all modifications to the EMPr to the relevant stakeholders.
developer Environmental Officer (dEO)	<u>Role</u> The dEOs will report to the Project Manager and are responsible for implementation of the EMPr, environmental monitoring and reporting, providing environmental input to the Project Manager and Contractor's Manager, liaising with contractors and the landowners as well as a range of environmental coordination responsibilities. <u>Responsibilities</u> - Be fully conversant with the EMPr; - Be familiar with the recommendations and mitigation measures of this EMPr, and implement these measures; - Ensure that all stipulations within the EMPr are communicated and adhered to by the Employees, Contractor(s) ; - Confine the development site to the demarcated area; - Conduct environmental internal audits with regards to EMPr and authorisation compliance (on cEO); - Assist the contractors in addressing environmental challenges on site; - Assist in incident management: - Reporting environmental incidents to developer and ensuring that corrective action is taken, and lessons learnt shared; - Assist the contractor in investigating environmental incidents and compile investigation reports; - Follow-up on pre-warnings, defects, non-conformance reports;

Responsible Person(s)	Role and Responsibilities
	- Measure and communicate environmental performance to the Contractor; - Conduct environmental awareness training on site together with ECO and cEO; - Ensure that the necessary legal permits and / or licenses are in place and up to date; - Acting as Developer's Environmental Representative on site and work together with the ECO and contractor;
Contractor	<u>Role</u> The Contractor appoints the cEO and has overall responsibility for ensuring that all work, activities, and actions linked to the delivery of the contract are in line with the EMPr and that Method Statements are implemented as described. External contractors must ensure compliance with this EMPr while performing the onsite activities as per their contract with the Project Developer. The contractors are required, where specified, to provide Method Statements setting out in detail how the impact management actions contained in the EMPr will be implemented during the development or expansion of substation infrastructure for the transmission and distribution of electricity activities. <u>Responsibilities</u> - project delivery and quality control for the development services as per appointment; - employ a suitably qualified person to monitor and report to the Project Developer's appointed person on the daily activities on-site during the construction period; - ensure that safe, environmentally acceptable working methods and practices are implemented and that equipment is properly operated and maintained, to facilitate proper access and enable any operation to be carried out safely; - attend on site meeting(s) prior to the commencement of activities to confirm the procedure and designated activity zones; - ensure that contractors' staff repair, at their own cost, any environmental damage as a result of a contravention of the specifications contained in EMPr, to the satisfaction of the ECO.

Responsible Person(s)	Role and Responsibilities
contractor Environmental Officer (cEO)	<u>Role</u> Each Contractor affected by the EMPr should appoint a cEO, who is responsible for the on-site implementation of the EMPr (or relevant sections of the EMPr). The Contractor's representative can be the site agent; site engineer; a dedicated environmental officer; or an independent consultant. The Contractor must ensure that the Contractor's Representative is suitably qualified to perform the necessary tasks and is appointed at a level such that she/he can interact effectively with other site Contractors, labourers, the Environmental Control Officer and the public. As a minimum the cEO shall meet the following criteria: <u>Responsibilities</u> - Be on site throughout the duration of the project and be dedicated to the project; - Ensure all their staff are aware of the environmental requirements, conditions and constraints with respect to all of their activities on site; - Implementing the environmental conditions, guidelines and requirements as stipulated within the EA, EMPr and Method Statements; - Attend the Environmental Site Meeting; - Undertaking corrective actions where non-compliances are registered within the stipulated timeframes; - Report back formally on the completion of corrective actions; - Assist the ECO in maintaining all the site documentation; - Prepare the site inspection reports and corrective action reports for submission to the ECO; - Assist the ECO with the preparing of the monthly report; and - Where more than one Contractor is undertaking work on site, each company appointed as a Contractor will appoint a cEO representing that company.

4. ENVIRONMENTAL DOCUMENTATION REPORTING AND COMPLIANCE

To ensure accountable and demonstrated implementation of the EMPr, a number of reporting systems, documentation controls and compliance mechanisms must be in place for all substation infrastructure projects as a minimum requirement.

4.1 Document control/Filing system

The holder of the EA is solely responsible for the upkeep and management of the EMPr file. As a minimum, all documentation detailed below will be stored in the EMPr file. A hard copy of all documentation shall be filed, while an electronic copy may be kept where relevant. A duplicate file will be maintained in the office of the DSS (where applicable). This duplicate file must remain current and up-to-date. The filing system must be updated and relevant documents added as required. The EMPr file must be made available at all times on request by the CA or other relevant authorities. The EMPr file will form part of any environmental audits undertaken as prescribed in the EIA Regulations.

4.2 Documentation to be available

At the outset of the project the following preliminary list of documents shall be placed in the filing system and be accessible at all times:

- Full copy of the signed EA from the CA in terms of NEMA, granting approval for the development or expansion;
- Copy of the generic and site specific EMPr as well as any amendments thereof;
- Copy of declaration of implementing generic EMPr and subsequent approval of site specific EMPr and amendments thereof;
- All method statements;
- Completed environmental checklists;
- Minutes and attendance register of environmental site meetings;
- An up-to-date environmental incident log;
- A copy of all instructions or directives issued;
- A copy of all corrective actions signed off. The corrective actions must be filed in such a way that a clear reference is made to the non-compliance record;
- Complaints register.

4.3 Weekly Environmental Checklist

The ECOs are required to complete a Weekly Environmental Checklist, the format of which is to be agreed prior to commencement of the activity. The ECOs are required to sign and date the checklist, retain a copy in the EMPr file and submit a copy of the completed checklist to the DSS on a weekly basis.

The checklists will form the basis for the Monthly Environmental Reports. Copies of all completed checklists will be attached as Annexures to the Environmental Audit Report as required in terms of the EIA Regulations.

4.4 Environmental site meetings

Minutes of the environmental site meetings shall be kept. The minutes must include an attendance register and will be attached to the Monthly Report that is distributed to attendees. Each set of minutes must clearly record "Matters for Attention" that will be reviewed at the next meeting.

4.5 Required Method Statements

The method statement will be done in such detail that the ECOs are enabled to assess whether the contractor's proposal is in accordance with the EMPr.

The method statement must cover applicable details with regard to:

- development procedures;
- materials and equipment to be used;
- getting the equipment to and from site;
- how the equipment/ material will be moved while on site;
- how and where material will be stored;
- the containment (or action to be taken if containment is not possible) of leaks or spills of any liquid or material that may occur;
- timing and location of activities;
- compliance/ non-compliance with the EMPr; and
- any other information deemed necessary by the ECOs.

Unless indicated otherwise by the Project Manager, the Contractor shall provide the following method statements to the Project Manager no less than 14 days prior to the commencement date of the activity:

- Site establishment – Camps, Lay-down or storage areas, satellite camps, infrastructure;
- Batch plants;
- Workshop or plant servicing;
- Handling, transport and storage of Hazardous Chemical Substance's;
- Vegetation management – Protected, clearing, aliens, felling;
- Access management – Roads, gates, crossings etc.;
- Fire plan;
- Waste management – transport, storage, segregation, classification, disposal (all waste streams);
- Social interaction – complaints management, compensation claims, access to properties etc.;
- Water – use (source, abstraction and disposal), access and all related information, crossings and mitigation;
- Emergency preparedness – Spills, training, other environmental emergencies;
- Dust and noise management methodologies;
- Fauna interaction and risk management – only if the risk was identified – wildlife interaction especially on game farms; and
- Heritage and palaeontology management.

The ECOs shall monitor and ensure that the contractors perform in accordance with these method statements. Completed and agreed method statements between the holder of the EA and the contractor shall be captured in Appendix 1.

4.6 Environmental Incident Log (Diary)

The ECOs are required to maintain an up-to-date and current Environmental Incident Log (environmental diary). The Environmental Incident Log is a means to record all environmental incidents and/or all non-compliance notice would not be issued. An environmental incident is defined as:

- Any deviation from the listed impact management actions (listed in this EMPr) that may be addressed immediately by the ECOs. (For example a contractor's staff member littering or a drip tray that has not been emptied);
- Any environmental impact resulting from an action or activity by a contractor in contravention of the environmental stipulations and guidelines listed in the EMPr which as a single event would have a minor impact but which if cumulative and continuous would have a significant effect (for example no toilet paper available in the ablutions for an afternoon); and
- General environmental information such as road kills or injured wildlife.

The ECOs are to record all environmental incidents in the Environmental Incident Log. All incidents regardless of severity must be reported to the Developer. The Log is to be kept in the EMPr file and at a minimum the following will be recorded for each environmental incident:

- The date and time of the incident;
- Description of the incident;
- The name of the Contractor responsible;
- The incident must be listed as significant or minor;
- If the incident is listed as significant, a non-compliance notice must be issued, and recorded in the log;
- Remedial or corrective action taken to mitigate the incident; and
- Record of repeat minor offences by the same contractor or staff member.

The Environmental Incident Log will be captured in the EAR.

4.7 Non-compliance

A non-compliance notice will be issued to the responsible contractor by the ECOs via the DSS or Project Manager. The non-compliance notice will be issued in writing; a copy filed in the EMPr file and will at a minimum include the following:

- Time and date of the non-compliance;
- Name of the contractor responsible;
- Nature and description of the non-compliance;
- Recommended / required corrective action; and
- Date by which the corrective action to be completed.
- The contractors shall act immediately when a notice of non-compliance is received and correct whatever is the cause for the issuing of the notice.

Complaints received regarding activities on the development site pertaining to the environment shall be recorded in a dedicated register and the response noted with the date and action taken. The ECO should be made aware of any complaints. Any non-compliance with the agreed procedures of the EMPr is a transgression of the various statutes and laws that define the manner by which the environment is managed. Failure to redress the cause shall be reported to the relevant CA for them to deal with the transgression, as it deems fit. The contractor is deemed not to have complied with the EMPr if, inter alia, There is a deviation from the environmental conditions, impact management outcomes and impact management actions activities, as approved in generic and site specific EMPr as relevant as set out in the EMPr, which deviation has, or may cause, an environmental impact.

4.8 Corrective action records

For each non-compliance notice issued, a documented corrective action must be recorded. On receiving a non-compliance notice from the DSS, the contractor's cEO will ensure that the corrective actions required take place within the stipulated timeframe. On completion of the corrective action the cEO is to issue a Corrective Action Report in writing to the ECOs. If satisfied that the corrective action has been completed, the ECOs are to sign-off on the Corrective Action Report, and attach the report to the non-compliance notice in the EMPr file. A corrective action is considered complete once the report has signed off by the ECOs.

4.9 Photographic record

A digital photographic record will be kept. The photographic record will be used to show before, during and post rehabilitation evidence of the project as well used in cases of damages claims if they arise. Each image must be dated and a brief description note attached.

The Contractor shall:

1. Allow the ECOs access to take photographs of all areas, activities and actions.

The ECOs shall keep an electronic database of photographic records which will include:

1. Pictures of all areas designated as work areas, camp areas, development sites and storage areas taken before these areas are set up;
2. All bunding and fencing;
3. Road conditions and road verges;
4. Condition of all farm fences;
5. Topsoil storage areas;
6. All areas to be cordoned off during construction;
7. Waste management sites;
8. Ablution facilities (inside and out);
9. Any non-conformances deemed to be "significant";
10. All completed corrective actions for non-compliances;
11. All required signage;
12. Photographic recordings of incidents;
13. All areas before, during and post rehabilitation; and

14. Include relevant photographs in the Final Environmental Audit Report.

4.10 Complaints register

The ECOs shall keep a current and up-to-date complaints register. The complaints register is to be a record of all complaints received from communities, stakeholders and individuals. The Complaints Record shall:

1. Record the name and contact details of the complainant;
2. Record the time and date of the complaint;
3. Contain a detailed description of the complaint;
4. Where relevant and appropriate, contain photographic evidence of the complaint or damage (ECOs to take relevant photographs); and
5. Contain a copy of the ECOs written response to each complaint received and keep a record of any further correspondence with the complainant. The ECO's written response will include a description of any corrective action to be taken and must be signed by the Contractor, ECO and affected party. Where a damage claim is issued by the complainant, the ECOs shall respond as described in (**section 4.11**) below.

4.11 Claims for damages

In the event that a Claim for Damages is submitted by a community, landowner or individual, the ECOs shall:

1. Record the full detail of the complaint as described in (**section 4.10**) above;
2. The DPM will evaluate the claim and associated damage and submit the evaluation to the Senior Site Representative for approval;
3. Following consideration by the DPM, the claim is to be resolved and settled immediately, or the reason for not accepting the claim communicated in writing to the claimant. Should the claimant not accept this, the ECO shall, in writing report the incident to the Developer's negotiator and legal department; and
4. A formal record of the response by the ECOs to the claimant as well as the rectification of the method of making payments not amount will be recorded in the EMPr file.

4.12 Interactions with affected parties

Open, transparent and good relations with affected landowners, communities and regional staff are an essential aspect to the successful management and mitigation of environmental impacts.

The ECOs shall:

1. Ensure that all queries, complaints and claims are dealt within an agreed timeframe;
2. Ensure that any or all agreements are documented, signed by all parties and a record of the agreement kept in the EMPr file;
3. Ensure that a complaints telephone numbers are made available to all landowners and affected parties; and

4. Ensure that contact with affected parties is courteous at all times;

4.13 Environmental audits

Internal environmental audits of the activity and implementation of the EMPr must be undertaken. The findings and outcomes included in the EMPr file and submitted to the CA at intervals as indicated in the EA.

The ECOs must prepare a monthly EAR. The report will be tabled as the key point on the agenda of the Environmental Site Meeting. The Report is submitted for acceptance at the meeting and the final report will be circulated to the Project Manager and filed in the EMPr file. At a frequency determined by the EA, the ECOs shall submit the monthly reports to the CA. At a minimum the monthly report is to cover the following:

- Weekly Environmental Checklists;
- Deviations and non-compliances with the checklists;
- Non-compliances issued;
- Completed and reported corrective actions;
- Environmental Monitoring;
- General environmental findings and actions; and
- Minutes of the Bi-monthly Environmental Site Meetings.

4.14 Final environmental audits

On final completion of the rehabilitation and/or requirements of the EA a final EAR is to be prepared and submitted to the CA. The EAR must comply with Appendix 7 of the EIA Regulations.

PART B: SECTION 1: Pre-approved generic EMPr template

5. IMPACT MANAGEMENT OUTCOMES AND IMPACT MANAGEMENT ACTIONS

This section provides a pre-approved generic EMPr template with aspects that are common to the development of substation infrastructure for the transmission and distribution of electricity. There is a list of aspects identified for the development or expansion of substation infrastructure for the transmission and distribution of electricity, and for each aspect a set of prescribed impact management outcomes and associated impact management actions have been identified. Holders of EAs are responsible to ensure the implementation of these outcomes and actions for all projects as a minimum requirement, in order to mitigate the impact of such aspects identified for the development or expansion of substation infrastructure for the transmission and distribution of electricity.

The template provided below is to be completed by providing the information under each heading for each environmental impact management action.

The completed template must be signed and dated on each page by both the contractor and the holder of the EA prior to commencement of the activity. The method statements prepared and agreed to by the holder of the EA must be appended to the template as Appendix 1. Each method statement must also be duly signed and dated on each page by the contactor and the holder of the EA. This template, once signed and dated, is legally binding. The holder of the EA will remain responsible for its implementation.

5.1 Environmental awareness training

Impact management outcome: All onsite staff are aware and understands the individual responsibilities in terms of this EMPr.						
Impact Management Actions	**Implementation**			**Monitoring**		
	Responsible person	Method of implementation	Timeframe for implementation	Responsible person	Frequency	Evidence of compliance
– All staff must receive environmental awareness training prior to commencement of the activities; – The Contractor must allow for sufficient sessions to train all personnel with no more than 20 personnel attending each course; – Refresher environmental awareness training is available as and when required; – All staff are aware of the conditions and controls linked to the EA and within the EMPr and made aware of their individual roles and responsibilities in achieving compliance with the EA and EMPr; – The Contractor must erect and maintain information posters at key locations on site, and the posters must include the following information as a minimum: a) Safety notifications; and b) No littering. – Environmental awareness training must include as a minimum the following: a) Description of significant environmental impacts, actual or potential, related to their work activities; b) Mitigation measures to be implemented when carrying out specific activities;	**Contractor**	**As defined in EMPr and method statements submitted**	**Throughout construction period**	**ECO**	**Monthly**	**ECO reporting**

c) Emergency preparedness and response procedures; d) Emergency procedures; e) Procedures to be followed when working near or within sensitive areas; f) Wastewater management procedures; g) Water usage and conservation; h) Solid waste management procedures; i) Sanitation procedures; j) Fire prevention; and k) Disease prevention. – A record of all environmental awareness training courses undertaken as part of the EMPr must be available; – Educate workers on the dangers of open and/or unattended fires; – A staff attendance register of all staff to have received environmental awareness training must be available. – Course material must be available and presented in appropriate languages that all staff can understand.						

5.2 Site Establishment development

Impact management outcome: Impacts on the environment are minimised during site establishment and the development footprint are kept to demarcated

development area.						
Impact Management Actions	**Implementation**			**Monitoring**		
	Responsible person	Method of implementation	Timeframe for implementation	Responsible person	Frequency	Evidence of compliance
– A method statement must be provided by the contractor prior to any onsite activity that includes the layout of the construction camp in the form of a plan showing the location of key infrastructure and services (where applicable), including but not limited to offices, overnight vehicle parking areas, stores, the workshop, stockpile and lay down areas, hazardous materials storage areas (including fuels), the batching plant (if one is located at the construction camp), designated access routes, equipment cleaning areas and the placement of staff accommodation, cooking and ablution facilities, waste and wastewater management; – Location of camps must be within approved area to ensure that the site does not impact on sensitive areas identified in the environmental assessment or site walk through; – Sites must be located where possible on previously disturbed areas; – The camp must be fenced in accordance with ***Section 5.5: Fencing and gate installation***; and – The use of existing accommodation for contractor staff, where possible, is encouraged.	**Contractor**	**As defined in EMPr and method statements submitted**	**Throughout construction period**	**ECO**	**Monthly**	**ECO reporting**

5.3 Access restricted areas

Impact management outcome: Access to restricted areas prevented.

Impact Management Actions	Implementation			Monitoring		
	Responsible person	Method of implementation	Timeframe for implementation	Responsible person	Frequency	Evidence of compliance
– Identification of access restricted areas is to be informed by the environmental assessment, site walk through and any additional areas identified during development; – Erect, demarcate and maintain a temporary barrier with clear signage around the perimeter of any access restricted area, colour coding could be used if appropriate; and – Unauthorised access and development related activity inside access restricted areas is prohibited.	**Contractor**	**As defined in EMPr and method statements submitted**	**Throughout construction period**	**ECO**	**Monthly**	**ECO reporting**

5.4 Access roads

Impact management outcome: Minimise impact to the environment through the planned and restricted movement of vehicles on site.

Impact Management Actions	Implementation			Monitoring		
	Responsible person	Method of implementation	Timeframe for implementation	Responsible person	Frequency	Evidence of compliance
– An access agreement must be formalised and signed by the DPM, Contractor and landowner before commencing with the activities; – All private roads used for access to the servitude must be maintained and upon completion of the works, be left in at least the original condition – All contractors must be made aware of all these access routes.	**Contractor**	**As defined in EMPr and method statements submitted**	**Throughout construction period**	**ECO**	**Monthly**	**ECO reporting**

– Any access route deviation from that in the written agreement must be closed and re-vegetated immediately, at the contractor's expense; – Maximum use of both existing servitudes and existing roads must be made to minimize further disturbance through the development of new roads; – In circumstances where private roads must be used, the condition of the said roads must be recorded in accordance with ***section 4.9: photographic record***; prior to use and the condition thereof agreed by the landowner, the DPM, and the contractor; – Access roads in flattish areas must follow fence lines and tree belts to avoid fragmentation of vegetated areas or croplands – Access roads must only be developed on a pre-planned and approved roads.						

5.5 Fencing and Gate installation

Impact management outcome: Minimise impact to the environment and ensure safe and controlled access to the site through the erection of fencing and gates where required.		
Impact Management Actions	**Implementation**	**Monitoring**

	Responsible person	Method of implementation	Timeframe for implementation	Responsible person	Frequency	Evidence of compliance
– Use existing gates provided to gain access to all parts of the area authorised for development, where possible; – Existing and new gates to be recorded and documented in accordance with **section *4.9: photographic record***; – All gates must be fitted with locks and be kept locked at all times during the development phase, unless otherwise agreed with the landowner; – At points where the line crosses a fence in which there is no suitable gate within the extent of the line servitude, on the instruction of the DPM, a gate must be installed at the approval of the landowner; – Care must be taken that the gates must be so erected that there is a gap of no more than 100 mm between the bottom of the gate and the ground; – Where gates are installed in jackal proof fencing, a suitable reinforced concrete sill must be provided beneath the gate; – Original tension must be maintained in the fence wires; – All gates installed in electrified fencing must be re-electrified; – All demarcation fencing and barriers must be maintained in good working order for the duration of the development activities; – Fencing must be erected around the camp, batching plants, hazardous storage areas, and all designated access restricted areas, where applicable; – Any temporary fencing to restrict the movement of life-stock must only be erected with the permission of the land owner. – All fencing must be developed of high quality material bearing the SABS mark;	**Contractor**	**As defined in EMPr and method statements submitted**	**Throughout construction period**	**ECO**	**Monthly**	**ECO reporting**

– The use of razor wire as fencing must be avoided; – Fenced areas with gate access must remain locked after hours, during weekends and on holidays if staff is away from site. Site security will be required at all times; – On completion of the development phase all temporary fences are to be removed; – The contractor must ensure that all fence uprights are appropriately removed, ensuring that no uprights are cut at ground level but rather removed completely.						

5.6 Water Supply Management

Impact management outcome: Undertake responsible water usage**.**						
Impact Management Actions	**Implementation**			**Monitoring**		
	Responsible person	Method of implementation	Timeframe for implementation	Responsible person	Frequency	Evidence of compliance
– All abstraction points or bore holes must be registered with the DWS and suitable water meters installed to ensure that the abstracted volumes are measured on a daily basis; – The Contractor must ensure the following: a. The vehicle abstracting water from a river does not enter or cross it and does not operate from within the river; b. No damage occurs to the river bed or banks and that the abstraction of water does not entail stream diversion activities; and c. All reasonable measures to limit pollution or sedimentation of the downstream watercourse are	**Contractor**	**As defined in EMPr and method statements submitted**	**Throughout construction period**	**ECO**	**Monthly**	**ECO reporting**

implemented. – Ensure water conservation is being practiced by: a. Minimising water use during cleaning of equipment; b. Undertaking regular audits of water systems; and c. Including a discussion on water usage and conservation during environmental awareness training. d. The use of grey water is encouraged.						

5.7 Storm and waste water management

Impact management outcome: Impacts to the environment caused by storm water and wastewater discharges during construction are avoided.

Impact Management Actions	**Implementation**			**Monitoring**		
	Responsible person	Method of implementation	Timeframe for implementation	Responsible person	Frequency	Evidence of compliance
– Runoff from the cement/ concrete batching areas must be strictly controlled, and contaminated water must be collected, stored and either treated or disposed of off-site, at a location approved by the project manager; – All spillage of oil onto concrete surfaces must be controlled by the use of an approved absorbent material and the used absorbent material disposed of at an appropriate waste disposal facility; – Natural storm water runoff not contaminated during the development and clean water can be discharged directly to watercourses and water bodies, subject to the Project Manager's approval and support by the ECO; – Water that has been contaminated with suspended solids,	**Contractor**	**As defined in EMPr and method statements submitted**	**Throughout construction period**	**ECO**	**Monthly**	**ECO reporting**

such as soils and silt, may be released into watercourses or water bodies only once all suspended solids have been removed from the water by settling out these solids in settlement ponds. The release of settled water back into the environment must be subject to the Project Manager's approval and support by the ECO.						

5.8 Solid and hazardous waste management

Impact management outcome: Wastes are appropriately stored, handled and safely disposed of at a recognised waste facility.

Impact Management Actions	**Implementation**			**Monitoring**		
	Responsible person	Method of implementation	Timeframe for implementation	Responsible person	Frequency	Evidence of compliance
– All measures regarding waste management must be undertaken using an integrated waste management approach; – Sufficient, covered waste collection bins (scavenger and weatherproof) must be provided; – A suitably positioned and clearly demarcated waste collection site must be identified and provided; – The waste collection site must be maintained in a clean and orderly manner; – Waste must be segregated into separate bins and clearly marked for each waste type for recycling and safe disposal; – Staff must be trained in waste segregation; – Bins must be emptied regularly;	**Contractor**	**As defined in EMPr and method statements submitted**	**Throughout construction period**	**ECO**	**Monthly**	**ECO reporting**

– General waste produced onsite must be disposed of at registered waste disposal sites/ recycling company; – Hazardous waste must be disposed of at a registered waste disposal site; – Certificates of safe disposal for general, hazardous and recycled waste must be maintained.						

5.9 Protection of watercourses and estuaries

Impact management outcome: Pollution and contamination of the watercourse environment and or estuary erosion are prevented.						
Impact Management Actions	**Implementation**			**Monitoring**		
	Responsible person	Method of implementation	Timeframe for implementation	Responsible person	Frequency	Evidence of compliance
– All watercourses must be protected from direct or indirect spills of pollutants such as solid waste, sewage, cement, oils, fuels, chemicals, aggregate tailings, wash and contaminated water or organic material resulting from the Contractor's activities; – In the event of a spill, prompt action must be taken to clear the polluted or affected areas; – Where possible, no development equipment must traverse any seasonal or permanent wetland – No return flow into the estuaries must be allowed and no disturbance of the Estuarine functional Zone should occur; – Development of permanent watercourse or estuary crossing must only be undertaken where no alternative access to tower position is available;	**Contractor**	**As defined in EMPr and method statements submitted**	**Throughout construction period**	**ECO**	**Monthly**	**ECO reporting**

– There must not be any impact on the long term morphological dynamics of watercourses or estuaries; – Existing crossing points must be favored over the creation of new crossings (including temporary access) – When working in or near any watercourse or estuary, the following environmental controls and consideration must be taken: a) Water levels during the period of construction; No altering of the bed, banks, course or characteristics of a watercourse b) During the execution of the works, appropriate measures to prevent pollution and contamination of the riparian environment must be implemented e.g. including ensuring that construction equipment is well maintained; c) Where earthwork is being undertaken in close proximity to any watercourse, slopes must be stabilised using suitable materials, i.e. sandbags or geotextile fabric, to prevent sand and rock from entering the channel; and d) Appropriate rehabilitation and re-vegetation measures for the watercourse banks must be implemented timeously. In this regard, the banks should be appropriately and incrementally stabilised as soon as development allows.						

5.10 Vegetation clearing

Impact management outcome: Vegetation clearing is restricted to the authorised development footprint of the proposed infrastructure.		
Impact Management Actions	**Implementation**	**Monitoring**

	Responsible person	Method of implementation	Timeframe for implementation	Responsible person	Frequency	Evidence of compliance
General: – Indigenous vegetation which does not interfere with the development must be left undisturbed; – Protected or endangered species may occur on or near the development site. Special care should be taken not to damage such species; – Search, rescue and replanting of all protected and endangered species likely to be damaged during project development must be identified by the relevant specialist and completed prior to any development or clearing; – Permits for removal must be obtained from the relevant CA prior to the cutting or clearing of the affected species, and they must be filed; – The Environmental Audit Report must confirm that all identified species have been rescued and replanted and that the location of replanting is compliant with conditions of approvals; – Trees felled due to construction must be documented and form part of the Environmental Audit Report; – Rivers and watercourses must be kept clear of felled trees, vegetation cuttings and debris; – Only a registered pest control operator may apply herbicides on a commercial basis and commercial application must be carried out under the supervision of a registered pest control operator, supervision of a registered pest control operator or is appropriately trained; – A daily register must be kept of all relevant details of	**Contractor**	**As defined in EMPr and method statements submitted**	**Throughout construction period**	**ECO**	**Monthly**	**ECO reporting**

herbicide usage; – No herbicides must be used in estuaries; – All protected species and sensitive vegetation not removed must be clearly marked and such areas fenced off in accordance to ***Section 5.3: Access restricted areas***. Alien invasive vegetation must be removed and disposed of at a licensed waste management facility.						

5.11 Protection of fauna

Impact management outcome: Disturbance to fauna is minimised.						
Impact Management Actions	**Implementation**			**Monitoring**		
	Responsible person	Method of implementation	Timeframe for implementation	Responsible person	Frequency	Evidence of compliance
– No interference with livestock must occur without the landowner's written consent and with the landowner or a person representing the landowner being present; – The breeding sites of raptors and other wild birds species must be taken into consideration during the planning of the development programme; – Breeding sites must be kept intact and disturbance to breeding birds must be avoided. Special care must be taken where nestlings or fledglings are present; – Special recommendations of the avian specialist must be adhered to at all times to prevent unnecessary disturbance of birds; – No poaching must be tolerated under any circumstances.	**Contractor**	**As defined in EMPr and method statements submitted**	**Throughout construction period**	**ECO**	**Monthly**	**ECO reporting**

All animal dens in close proximity to the works areas must be marked as Access restricted areas; – No deliberate or intentional killing of fauna is allowed; – In areas where snakes are abundant, snake deterrents to be deployed on the pylons to prevent snakes climbing up, being electrocuted and causing power outages; and – No Threatened or Protected species (ToPs) and/or protected fauna as listed according NEMBA (Act No. 10 of 2004) and relevant provincial ordinances may be removed and/or relocated without appropriate authorisations/permits.						

5.12 Protection of heritage resources

Impact management outcome: Impact to heritage resources is minimised.						
Impact Management Actions	**Implementation**			**Monitoring**		
	Responsible person	Method of implementation	Timeframe for implementation	Responsible person	Frequency	Evidence of compliance
– Identify, demarcate and prevent impact to all known sensitive heritage features on site in accordance with the No-Go procedure in ***Section 5.3: Access restricted areas***; – Carry out general monitoring of excavations for potential fossils, artefacts and material of heritage importance; – All work must cease immediately, if any human remains and/or other archaeological, palaeontological and historical material are uncovered. Such material, if exposed, must be reported to the nearest museum, archaeologist/ palaeontologist (or the South African Police Services), so that	**Contractor**	**As defined in EMPr and method statements submitted**	**Throughout construction period**	**ECO**	**Monthly**	**ECO reporting**

a systematic and professional investigation can be undertaken. Sufficient time must be allowed to remove/collect such material before development recommences.						

5.13 Safety of the public

Impact management outcome: All precautions are taken to minimise the risk of injury, harm or complaints.

Impact Management Actions	**Implementation**			**Monitoring**		
	Responsible person	Method of implementation	Timeframe for implementation	Responsible person	Frequency	Evidence of compliance
– Identify fire hazards, demarcate and restrict public access to these areas as well as notify the local authority of any potential threats e.g. large brush stockpiles, fuels etc.; – All unattended open excavations must be adequately fenced or demarcated; – Adequate protective measures must be implemented to prevent unauthorised access to and climbing of partly constructed towers and protective scaffolding; – Ensure structures vulnerable to high winds are secured; – Maintain an incidents and complaints register in which all incidents or complaints involving the public are logged.	**Contractor**	**As defined in EMPr and method statements submitted**	**Throughout construction period**	**ECO**	**Monthly**	**ECO reporting**

5.14 Sanitation

Impact management outcome: Clean and well maintained toilet facilities are available to all staff in an effort to minimise the risk of disease and impact to the environment.

Impact Management Actions	Implementation			Monitoring		
	Responsible person	Method of implementation	Timeframe for implementation	Responsible person	Frequency	Evidence of compliance
– Mobile chemical toilets are installed onsite if no other ablution facilities are available; – The use of ablution facilities and or mobile toilets must be used at all times and no indiscriminate use of the veld for the purposes of ablutions must be permitted under any circumstances; – Where mobile chemical toilets are required, the following must be ensured: a) Toilets are located no closer than 100 m to any watercourse or water body; b) Toilets are secured to the ground to prevent them from toppling due to wind or any other cause; c) No spillage occurs when the toilets are cleaned or emptied and the contents are managed in accordance with the EMPr; d) Toilets have an external closing mechanism and are closed and secured from the outside when not in use to prevent toilet paper from being blown out; e) Toilets are emptied before long weekends and workers holidays, and must be locked after working hours; f) Toilets are serviced regularly and the ECO must inspect toilets to ensure compliance to health standards; – A copy of the waste disposal certificates must be maintained.	**Contractor**	**As defined in EMPr and method statements submitted**	**Throughout construction period**	**ECO**	**Monthly**	**ECO reporting**

5.15 Prevention of disease

Impact Management outcome: All necessary precautions linked to the spread of disease are taken.

Impact Management Actions	**Implementation**			**Monitoring**		
	Responsible person	Method of implementation	Timeframe for implementation	Responsible person	Frequency	Evidence of compliance
– Undertake environmentally-friendly pest control in the camp area; – Ensure that the workforce is sensitised to the effects of sexually transmitted diseases, especially HIV AIDS; – The Contractor must ensure that information posters on AIDS are displayed in the Contractor Camp area; – Information and education relating to sexually transmitted diseases to be made available to both construction workers and local community, where applicable; – Free condoms must be made available to all staff on site at central points; – Medical support must be made available; – Provide access to Voluntary HIV Testing and Counselling Services.	**Contractor**	**As defined in EMPr and method statements submitted**	**Throughout construction period**	**ECO**	**Monthly**	**ECO reporting**

5.16 Emergency procedures

Impact management outcome: Emergency procedures are in place to enable a rapid and effective response to all types of environmental emergencies.

Impact Management Actions	Implementation			Monitoring		
	Responsible person	Method of implementation	Timeframe for implementation	Responsible person	Frequency	Evidence of compliance
– Compile an Emergency Response Action Plan (ERAP) prior to the commencement of the proposed project; – The Emergency Plan must deal with accidents, potential spillages and fires in line with relevant legislation; – All staff must be made aware of emergency procedures as part of environmental awareness training; – The relevant local authority must be made aware of a fire as soon as it starts; – In the event of emergency necessary mitigation measures to contain the spill or leak must be implemented (see ***Hazardous Substances section 5.17***).	**Contractor**	**As defined in EMPr and method statements submitted**	**Throughout construction period**	**ECO**	**Monthly**	**ECO reporting**

5.17 Hazardous substances

Impact management outcome: Safe storage, handling, use and disposal of hazardous substances.

Impact Management Actions	Implementation			Monitoring		
	Responsible person	Method of implementation	Timeframe for implementation	Responsible person	Frequency	Evidence of compliance
– The use and storage of hazardous substances to be minimised and non-hazardous and non-toxic alternatives	**Contractor**	**As defined in EMPr and**	**Throughout construction**	**ECO**	**Monthly**	**ECO reporting**

substituted where possible; – All hazardous substances must be stored in suitable containers as defined in the Method Statement; – Containers must be clearly marked to indicate contents, quantities and safety requirements; – All storage areas must be bunded. The bunded area must be of sufficient capacity to contain a spill / leak from the stored containers; – Bunded areas to be suitably lined with a SABS approved liner; – An Alphabetical Hazardous Chemical Substance (HCS) control sheet must be drawn up and kept up to date on a continuous basis; – All hazardous chemicals that will be used on site must have Material Safety Data Sheets (MSDS); – All employees working with HCS must be trained in the safe use of the substance and according to the safety data sheet; – Employees handling hazardous substances / materials must be aware of the potential impacts and follow appropriate safety measures. Appropriate personal protective equipment must be made available; – The Contractor must ensure that diesel and other liquid fuel, oil and hydraulic fluid is stored in appropriate storage tanks or in bowsers; – The tanks/ bowsers must be situated on a smooth impermeable surface (concrete) with a permanent bund. The impermeable lining must extend to the crest of the bund and the volume inside the bund must be 130% of the total capacity of all the storage tanks/ bowsers (110% statutory requirement plus an allowance for rainfall);		**method statements submitted**	**period**			

– The floor of the bund must be sloped, draining to an oil separator; – Provision must be made for refueling at the storage area by protecting the soil with an impermeable groundcover. Where dispensing equipment is used, a drip tray must be used to ensure small spills are contained; – All empty externally dirty drums must be stored on a drip tray or within a bunded area; – No unauthorised access into the hazardous substances storage areas must be permitted; – No smoking must be allowed within the vicinity of the hazardous storage areas; – Adequate fire-fighting equipment must be made available at all hazardous storage areas; – Where refueling away from the dedicated refueling station is required, a mobile refueling unit must be used. Appropriate ground protection such as drip trays must be used; – An appropriately sized spill kit kept onsite relevant to the scale of the activity/s involving the use of hazardous substance must be available at all times; – The responsible operator must have the required training to make use of the spill kit in emergency situations; – An appropriate number of spill kits must be available and must be located in all areas where activities are being undertaken; – In the event of a spill, contaminated soil must be collected in containers and stored in a central location and disposed of according to the National Environmental Management: Waste Act 59 of 2008. Refer to ***Section 5.7*** for procedures concerning ***storm and waste water management*** and ***5.8*** for ***solid and hazardous waste management.***						

5.18 Workshop, equipment maintenance and storage

Impact management outcome: Soil, surface water and groundwater contamination is minimised.

Impact Management Actions	**Implementation**			**Monitoring**		
	Responsible person	Method of implementation	Timeframe for implementation	Responsible person	Frequency	Evidence of compliance
– Where possible and practical all maintenance of vehicles and equipment must take place in the workshop area; – During servicing of vehicles or equipment, especially where emergency repairs are effected outside the workshop area, a suitable drip tray must be used to prevent spills onto the soil. The relevant local authority must be made aware of a fire as soon as it starts; – Leaking equipment must be repaired immediately or be removed from site to facilitate repair; – Workshop areas must be monitored for oil and fuel spills; – Appropriately sized spill kit kept onsite relevant to the scale of the activity taking place must be available; – The workshop area must have a bunded concrete slab that is sloped to facilitate runoff into a collection sump or suitable oil / water separator where maintenance work on vehicles and equipment can be performed; – Water drainage from the workshop must be contained and managed in accordance Section ***5.7: Storm and waste water management***.	**Contractor**	**As defined in EMPr and method statements submitted**	**Throughout construction period**	**ECO**	**Monthly**	**ECO reporting**

5.19 Batching plants

Impact management outcome: Minimise spillages and contamination of soil, surface water and groundwater.

Impact Management Actions	Implementation			Monitoring		
	Responsible person	Method of implementation	Timeframe for implementation	Responsible person	Frequency	Evidence of compliance
– Concrete mixing must be carried out on an impermeable surface; – Batching plants areas must be fitted with a containment facility for the collection of cement laden water. – Dirty water from the batching plant must be contained to prevent soil and groundwater contamination – Bagged cement must be stored in an appropriate facility and at least 10 m away from any water courses, gullies and drains; – A washout facility must be provided for washing of concrete associated equipment. Water used for washing must be restricted; – Hardened concrete from the washout facility or concrete mixer can either be reused or disposed of at an appropriate licenced disposal facility; – Empty cement bags must be secured with adequate binding material if these will be temporarily stored on site; – Sand and aggregates containing cement must be kept damp to prevent the generation of dust (Refer to ***Section 5.20: Dust emissions***) – Any excess sand, stone and cement must be removed or	**Contractor**	**As defined in EMPr and method statements submitted**	**Throughout construction period**	**ECO**	**Monthly**	**ECO reporting**

reused from site on completion of construction period and disposed at a registered disposal facility; – Temporary fencing must be erected around batching plants in accordance with Section ***5.5: Fencing and gate installation***.						

5.20 Dust emissions

Impact management outcome: Dust prevention measures are applied to minimise the generation of dust.						
Impact Management Actions	**Implementation**			**Monitoring**		
	Responsible person	Method of implementation	Timeframe for implementation	Responsible person	Frequency	Evidence of compliance
– Take all reasonable measures to minimise the generation of dust as a result of project development activities to the satisfaction of the ECO; – Removal of vegetation must be avoided until such time as soil stripping is required and similarly exposed surfaces must be re- vegetated or stabilised as soon as is practically possible; – Excavation, handling and transport of erodible materials must be avoided under high wind conditions or when a visible dust plume is present; – During high wind conditions, the ECO must evaluate the situation and make recommendations as to whether dust-damping measures are adequate, or whether working will cease altogether until the wind speed drops to an acceptable level; – Where possible, soil stockpiles must be located in sheltered	**Contractor**	**As defined in EMPr and method statements submitted**	**Throughout construction period**	**ECO**	**Monthly**	**ECO reporting**

areas where they are not exposed to the erosive effects of the wind; – Where erosion of stockpiles becomes a problem, erosion control measures must be implemented at the discretion of the ECO; – Vehicle speeds must not exceed 40 km/h along dust roads or 20 km/h when traversing unconsolidated and non-vegetated areas; – Straw stabilisation must be applied at a rate of one bale/10 m² and harrowed into the top 100 mm of top material, for all completed earthworks; – For significant areas of excavation or exposed ground, dust suppression measures must be used to minimise the spread of dust.						

5.21 Blasting

Impact management outcome: Impact to the environment is minimised through a safe blasting practice.						
Impact Management Actions	**Implementation**			**Monitoring**		
	Responsible person	Method of implementation	Timeframe for implementation	Responsible person	Frequency	Evidence of compliance
– Any blasting activity must be conducted by a suitably licensed blasting contractor; and – Notification of surrounding landowners, emergency services site personnel of blasting activity 24 hours prior to such activity taking place on Site.	**Contractor**	**As defined in EMPr and method statements submitted**	**Throughout construction period**	**ECO**	**Monthly**	**ECO reporting**

5.22 Noise

Impact Management outcome: Prevent unnecessary noise to the environment by ensuring that noise from development activity is mitigated.

Impact Management Actions	**Implementation**			**Monitoring**		
	Responsible person	Method of implementation	Timeframe for implementation	Responsible person	Frequency	Evidence of compliance
– The Contractor must keep noise level within acceptable limits, Restrict the use of sound amplification equipment for communication and emergency only; – All vehicles and machinery must be fitted with appropriate silencing technology and must be properly maintained; – Any complaints received by the Contractor regarding noise must be recorded and communicated. Where possible or applicable, provide transport to and from the site on a daily basis for construction workers; – Develop a Code of Conduct for the construction phase in terms of behaviour of construction staff. Operating hours as determined by the environmental authorisation are adhered to during the development phase. Where not defined, it must be ensured that development activities must still meet the impact management outcome related to noise management.	**Contractor**	**As defined in EMPr and method statements submitted**	**Throughout construction period**	**ECO**	**Monthly**	**ECO reporting**

5.23 Fire prevention

Impact management outcome: Prevention of uncontrollable fires.						
Impact Management Actions	**Implementation**			**Monitoring**		
	Responsible person	Method of implementation	Timeframe for implementation	Responsible person	Frequency	Evidence of compliance
– Designate smoking areas where the fire hazard could be regarded as insignificant; – Firefighting equipment must be available on all vehicles located on site; – The local Fire Protection Agency (FPA) must be informed of construction activities; – Contact numbers for the FPA and emergency services must be communicated in environmental awareness training and displayed at a central location on site; – Two way swop of contact details between ECO and FPA.	**Contractor**	**As defined in EMPr and method statements submitted**	**Throughout construction period**	**ECO**	**Monthly**	**ECO reporting**

5.24 Stockpiling and stockpile areas

Impact management outcome: Reduce erosion and sedimentation as a result of stockpiling.

Impact Management Actions	Implementation			Monitoring		
	Responsible person	Method of implementation	Timeframe for implementation	Responsible person	Frequency	Evidence of compliance
– All material that is excavated during the project development phase (either during piling (if required) or earthworks) must be stored appropriately on site in order to minimise impacts to watercourses, watercourses and water bodies; – All stockpiled material must be maintained and kept clear of weeds and alien vegetation growth by undertaking regular weeding and control methods; – Topsoil stockpiles must not exceed 2 m in height; – During periods of strong winds and heavy rain, the stockpiles must be covered with appropriate material (e.g. cloth, tarpaulin etc.); – Where possible, sandbags (or similar) must be placed at the bases of the stockpiled material in order to prevent erosion of the material.	**Contractor**	**As defined in EMPr and method statements submitted**	**Throughout construction period**	**ECO**	**Monthly**	**ECO reporting**

5.25 Civil works

Impact management outcome: Impact to the environment minimised during civil works to create the substation terrace.						
Impact Management Actions	**Implementation**			**Monitoring**		
	Responsible	Method of	Timeframe for	Responsible	Frequency	Evidence of

	person	implementation	implementation	person		compliance
– Where terracing is required, topsoil must be collected and retained for the purpose of re-use later to rehabilitate disturbed areas not covered by yard stone; – Areas to be rehabilitated include terrace embankments and areas outside the high voltage yards; – Where required, all sloped areas must be stabilised to ensure proper rehabilitation is effected and erosion is controlled; – These areas can be stabilised using design structures or vegetation as specified in the design to prevent erosion of embankments. The contract design specifications must be adhered to and implemented strictly; – Rehabilitation of the disturbed areas must be managed in accordance with ***Section 5.35: Landscaping and rehabilitation***; – All excess spoil generated during terracing activities must be disposed of in an appropriate manner and at a recognised landfill site; and – Spoil can however be used for landscaping purposes and must be covered with a layer of 150 mm topsoil for rehabilitation purposes.	**Contractor**	**As defined in EMPr and method statements submitted**	**Throughout construction period**	**ECO**	**Monthly**	**ECO reporting**

5.26 Excavation of foundation, cable trenching and drainage systems

Impact management outcome: No environmental degradation occurs as a result of excavation of foundation, cable trenching and drainage systems.						
Impact Management Actions	**Implementation**			**Monitoring**		
	Responsible person	Method of implementation	Timeframe for implementation	Responsible person	Frequency	Evidence of compliance
– All excess spoil generated during foundation excavation must be disposed of in an appropriate manner and at a licensed landfill site, if not used for backfilling purposes; – Spoil can however be used for landscaping purposes and must be covered with a layer of 150 mm topsoil for rehabilitation purposes; – Management of equipment for excavation purposes must be undertaken in accordance with ***Section 5.18: Workshop, equipment maintenance and storage***; and – Hazardous substances spills from equipment must be managed in accordance with ***Section 5.17: Hazardous substances***.	**Contractor**	**As defined in EMPr and method statements submitted**	**Throughout construction period**	**ECO**	**Monthly**	**ECO reporting**

5.27 Installation of foundations, cable trenching and drainage systems

Impact management outcome: No environmental degradation occurs during the installation of foundation, cable trenching and drainage system.		
Impact Management Actions	**Implementation**	**Monitoring**

	Responsible person	Method of implementation	Timeframe for implementation	Responsible person	Frequency	Evidence of compliance
– Batching of cement to be undertaken in accordance with **Section *5.19: Batching plants***; and – Residual solid waste must be disposed of in accordance with **Section *5.8: Solid waste and hazardous management***.	**Contractor**	**As defined in EMPr and method statements submitted**	**Throughout construction period**	**ECO**	**Monthly**	**ECO reporting**

5.28 Installation of equipment (circuit breakers, current Transformers, Isolators, Insulators, surge arresters, voltage transformers, earth switches)

Impact management outcome: No environmental degradation occurs as a result of installation of equipment.

Impact Management Actions	**Implementation**			**Monitoring**		
	Responsible person	Method of implementation	Timeframe for implementation	Responsible person	Frequency	Evidence of compliance
– Management of dust must be conducted in accordance with Section ***5. 20: Dust emissions***; – Management of equipment used for installation must be conducted in accordance with Section ***5.18: Workshop, equipment maintenance and storage***; – Management hazardous substances and any associated spills must be conducted in accordance with Section ***5.17: Hazardous substances***; and – Residual solid waste must be recycled or disposed of in accordance with ***Section 5.8: Solid waste and hazardous management***.	**Contractor**	**As defined in EMPr and method statements submitted**	**Throughout construction period**	**ECO**	**Monthly**	**ECO reporting**

5.29 Steelwork Assembly and Erection

Impact management outcome: No environmental degradation occurs as a result of steelwork assembly and erection.						
Impact Management Actions	**Implementation**			**Monitoring**		
	Responsible person	Method of implementation	Timeframe for implementation	Responsible person	Frequency	Evidence of compliance
– During assembly, care must be taken to ensure that no wasted/unused materials are left on site e.g. bolts and nuts – Emergency repairs due to breakages of equipment must be managed in accordance with ***Section 5. 18: Workshop, equipment maintenance and storage*** and ***Section 5.16: Emergency procedures***.	**Contractor**	**As defined in EMPr and method statements submitted**	**Throughout construction period**	**ECO**	**Monthly**	**ECO reporting**

5.30 Cabling and Stringing

Impact management outcome: No environmental degradation occurs as a result of stringing.						
Impact Management Actions	**Implementation**			**Monitoring**		
	Responsible	Method of	Timeframe for	Responsible	Frequency	Evidence of

	person	implementation	implementation	person		compliance
– Residual solid waste (off cuts etc.) shall be recycled or disposed of in accordance with **Section 6.8: *Solid waste and hazardous Management***; – Management of equipment used for installation shall be conducted in accordance with **Section *5.18: Workshop, equipment maintenance and storage***; – Management hazardous substances and any associated spills shall be conducted in accordance with ***Section 5.17: Hazardous substances***.	**Contractor**	**As defined in EMPr and method statements submitted**	**Throughout construction period**	**ECO**	**Monthly**	**ECO reporting**

5.31 Testing and Commissioning (all equipment testing, earthing system, system integration)

Impact management outcome: No environmental degradation occurs as a result of Testing and Commissioning.						
Impact Management Actions	**Implementation**			**Monitoring**		
	Responsible person	Method of implementation	Timeframe for implementation	Responsible person	Frequency	Evidence of compliance
– Residual solid waste must be recycled or disposed of in accordance with ***Section 5.8: Solid waste and hazardous management***.	**Contractor**	**As defined in EMPr and method statements submitted**	**Throughout construction period**	**ECO**	**Monthly**	**ECO reporting**

5.32 Socio-economic

Impact management outcome: enhanced socio-economic development.						
Impact Management Actions	**Implementation**			**Monitoring**		
	Responsible person	Method of implementation	Timeframe for implementation	Responsible person	Frequency	Evidence of compliance
– Develop and implement communication strategies to facilitate public participation; – Develop and implement a collaborative and constructive approach to conflict resolution as part of the external stakeholder engagement process; – Sustain continuous communication and liaison with neighboring owners and residents – Create work and training opportunities for local stakeholders; and – Where feasible, no workers, with the exception of security personnel, must be permitted to stay over-night on the site. This would reduce the risk to local farmers.	**Contractor**	**As defined in EMPr and method statements submitted**	**Throughout construction period**	**ECO**	**Monthly**	**ECO reporting**

5.33 Temporary closure of site

Impact management outcome: Minimise the risk of environmental impact during periods of site closure greater than five days.		
Impact Management Actions	**Implementation**	**Monitoring**

	Responsible person	Method of implementation	Timeframe for implementation	Responsible person	Frequency	Evidence of compliance
– Bunds must be emptied (where applicable) and need to be undertaken in accordance with the impact management actions included in ***sections 5.17: Hazardous substances and 5.18: Workshop, equipment maintenance and storage***; – Hazardous storage areas must be well ventilated; – Fire extinguishers must be serviced and accessible. Service records to be filed and audited at last service; – Emergency and contact details displayed must be displayed; – Security personnel must be briefed and have the facilities to contact or be contacted by relevant management and emergency personnel; – Night hazards such as reflectors, lighting, traffic signage etc. must have been checked; – Fire hazards identified and the local authority must have been notified of any potential threats e.g. large brush stockpiles, fuels etc.; – Structures vulnerable to high winds must be secured; – Wind and dust mitigation must be implemented; – Cement and materials stores must have been secured; – Toilets must have been emptied and secured; – Refuse bins must have been emptied and secured; – Drip trays must have been emptied and secured.	**Contractor**	**As defined in EMPr and method statements submitted**	**Throughout construction period**	**ECO**	**Monthly**	**ECO reporting**

5.34 Dismantling of old equipment

Impact management outcome: Impact to the environment to be minimised during the dismantling, storage and disposal of old equipment commissioning.

Impact Management Actions	Implementation			Monitoring		
	Responsible person	Method of implementation	Timeframe for implementation	Responsible person	Frequency	Evidence of compliance
– All old equipment removed during the project must be stored in such a way as to prevent pollution of the environment; – Oil containing equipment must be stored to prevent leaking or be stored on drip trays; – All scrap steel must be stacked neatly and any disused and broken insulators must be stored in containers; – Once material has been scrapped and the contract has been placed for removal, the disposal Contractor must ensure that any equipment containing pollution causing substances is dismantled and transported in such a way as to prevent spillage and pollution of the environment; – The Contractor must also be equipped to contain and clean up any pollution causing spills; and – Disposal of unusable material must be at a licensed waste disposal site.	**Contractor**	**As defined in EMPr and method statements submitted**	**Throughout construction period**	**ECO**	**Monthly**	**ECO reporting**

5.35 Landscaping and rehabilitation

Impact management outcome: Areas disturbed during the development phase are returned to a state that approximates the original condition.

Impact Management Actions	Implementation			Monitoring		
	Responsible person	Method of implementation	Timeframe for implementation	Responsible person	Frequency	Evidence of compliance
– All areas disturbed by construction activities must be subject to landscaping and rehabilitation; All spoil and waste must be disposed of to a registered waste site; – All slopes must be assessed for contouring, and to contour only when the need is identified in accordance with the Conservation of Agricultural Resources Act, No 43 of 1983 – All slopes must be assessed for terracing, and to terrace only when the need is identified in accordance with the Conservation of Agricultural Resources Act, No 43 of 1983; – Berms that have been created must have a slope of 1:4 and be replanted with indigenous species and grasses that approximates the original condition; – Where new access roads have crossed cultivated farmlands, that lands must be rehabilitated by ripping which must be agreed to by the holder of the EA and the landowners; – Rehabilitation of access roads outside of farmland; – Indigenous species must be used for with species and/grasses to where it compliments or approximates the original condition; – Stockpiled topsoil must be used for rehabilitation (refer to ***Section 5.24: Stockpiling and stockpiled areas***); – Stockpiled topsoil must be evenly spread so as to facilitate seeding and minimise loss of soil due to erosion; – Before placing topsoil, all visible weeds from the placement	**Contractor**	**As defined in EMPr and method statements submitted**	**Throughout construction period**	**ECO**	**Monthly**	**ECO reporting**

area and from the topsoil must be removed; – Subsoil must be ripped before topsoil is placed; – The rehabilitation must be timed so that rehabilitation can take place at the optimal time for vegetation establishment; – Where impacted through construction related activity, all sloped areas must be stabilised to ensure proper rehabilitation is effected and erosion is controlled; – Sloped areas stabilised using design structures or vegetation as specified in the design to prevent erosion of embankments. The contract design specifications must be adhered to and implemented strictly; – Spoil can be used for backfilling or landscaping as long as it is covered by a minimum of 150 mm of topsoil. – Where required, re-vegetation including hydro-seeding can be enhanced using a vegetation seed mixture as described below. A mixture of seed can be used provided the mixture is carefully selected to ensure the following: a) Annual and perennial plants are chosen; b) Pioneer species are included; c) Species chosen must be indigenous to the area with the seeds used coming from the area; d) Root systems must have a binding effect on the soil; e) The final product must not cause an ecological imbalance in the area						

6 ACCESS TO THE GENERIC EMPr

Once completed and signed, to allow the public access to the generic EMPr, the holder of the EA must make the EMPr available to the public in accordance with the requirements of Regulation 26(h) of the EIA Regulations.

PART B: SECTION 2

7 SITE SPECIFIC INFORMATION AND DECLARATION

7.1 Sub-section 1: contact details and description of the project

7.1.1 Details of the applicant:

Name of applicant:

Tel No:

Fax No**:**

Postal Address:

Physical Address:

7.1.2 Details and expertise of the EAP:

Name of EAP:

Tel No:

Fax No:

E-mail address:

Expertise of the EAP (Curriculum Vitae included**):**

7.1.3 Project name:

7.1.4 Description of the project:

7.1.5 Project location:

7.2 Sub-section 2: Development footprint site map

This sub-section must include a map of the site sensitivity overlaid with the preliminary infrastructure layout. The sensitivity map must be prepared from the national web based

environmental screening tool, when available for compulsory use at: https://screening.environment.gov.za/screeningtool. The sensitivity map shall identify the nature of each sensitive feature e.g. threatened plant species, archaeological site, etc. Sensitivity maps shall identify features both within the planned working area and any known sensitive features within 50 m from the development footprint.

7.3 Sub-section 3: Declaration

The proponent/applicant or holder of the EA affirms that he/she will abide and comply with the prescribed impact management outcomes and impact management actions as stipulated in part B: section 1 of the generic EMPr and have the understanding that the impact management outcomes and impact management actions are legally binding. The proponent/applicant or holder of the EA affirms that he/she will provide written notice to the CA 14 day prior to the date on which the activity will commence of commencement of construction to facilitate compliance inspections.

Signature Proponent/applicant/ holder of EA Date: **12 April 2022**

7.4 Sub-section 4: amendments to site specific information (Part B; section 2)

Should the EA be transferred to a new holder, Part B: Section 2 must be completed by the new holder and submitted with the application for an amendment of the EA in terms of Regulations 29 or 31 of the EIA Regulations, whichever applies. The information submitted for an amendment to an environmental authorisation will be considered to be incomplete should a signed copy of Part B: Section 2 not be submitted. Once approved, Part B: Section 2 forms part of the EMPr for the development and the EMPr becomes legally binding to the new EA holder.

PART C

8 SITE SPECIFIC ENVIRONMENTAL ATTRIBUTES

If any specific environmental sensitivities/attributes are present on the site which require more specific impact management outcomes and actions, not included in the pre-approved generic EMPr template, to manage impacts, those impact management outcomes and impact management actions must be included in this section. These specific management controls must be referenced spatially, and must include impact management outcomes and impact management actions. The management controls including impact management outcomes and impact management actions must be presented in the format of the pre-approved generic EMPr template. This applies only to additional impact management outcomes and impact management actions that are necessary.

If Part C is applicable to the development as authorised in the EA, it is required to be submitted to the CA together with the BAR or EIAR, for consideration of, and decision on, the application for EA. The information in this section must be prepared by an EAP and the name and expertise of the EAP, including the curriculum vitae are to be included. Once approved, Part C forms part of the EMPr for the site and is legally binding.

This section will **not be required** should the site contain no specific environmental sensitivities or attributes.

APPENDIX 1: METHOD STATEMENTS

To be prepared by the contractor prior to commencement of the activity. The method statements are **not required** to be submitted to the CA.

BASIC ASSESSMENT REPORT:

THE PROPOSED ROAN 2 PV FACILITY AND ASSOCIATED INFRASTRUCTURE NEAR HARTBEESFONTEIN, NORTH-WEST PROVINCE

TRANSPORT STUDY

February 2022
First Issue

Prepared by:

JG AFRIKA (PTY) LTD

Branch: Cape Town
PO Box 38561
Postal code: 7430
Telephone: 021 530 1800

VERIFICATION PAGE	Qual-frm-026
	Rev 14

TITLE:

THE PROPOSED ROAN 2 PV FACILITY AND ASSOCIATED INFRASTRUCTURE NEAR HARTBEESFONTEIN, NORTH-WEST PROVINCE

JGA REF. NO.	DATE:	REPORT STATUS
5696	22/02/2022	First Issue

CARRIED OUT BY:	COMMISSIONED BY:
JG AFRIKA (PTY) LTD **Cape Town** PO Box 38651 Pinelands 7430 Tel.: 021 530 1800 Email: Wink@jgafrika.com	**Cape EAPrac** **George** 17 Progress Street George, 6530 Tel: + 27 (44) 874 0365 Email: dale@cape-eaprac.co.za
AUTHOR	**CLIENT CONTACT PERSON**
Annamarie Stander	Dale Holder

SYNOPSIS

Preparation of a Transport Study for the proposed Roan 2 PV Facility, located near Hartbeesfontein in the North-West Province, pertaining to all relevant traffic and transportation engineering aspects.

KEY WORDS:

Transport Study, Basic Assessment, Solar PV Facility, Photovoltaic, PV

QUALITY VERIFICATION

This report has been prepared under the controls established by a quality management system that meets the requirements of ISO 9001: 2015 which has been independently certified by DEKRA Certification.

Verification	Capacity	Name	Signature	Date
By Author	Senior Engineer	Annamarie Stander		22/02/2022
Checked by:	Associate	Iris Wink		22/02/2022
Authorised by:	Director	Harold Tiganis		22/02/2022
Filename:	https://jgafrika.sharepoint.com/sites/Job5696-team-100-WIP-Internal-Eng/Shared Documents/100-WIP-Internal-Eng/104-Studies/5696_Roan 2 PV_JG AFRIKA 18022022.docx			

Report template version: 2017-10-30

THE PROPOSED ROAN 2 PV FACILITY AND ASSOCIATED INFRASTRUCTE NEAR HARTBEESFONTEIN, NORTH-WEST PROVINCE

TABLE OF CONTENTS

TABLES

FIGURES

ANNEXURES

THE PROPOSED ROAN 2 PV FACILITY AND ASSOCIATED INFRASTRUCTURE NEAR HARTBEESFONTEIN, NORTH-WEST PROVINCE

1 INTRODUCTION AND METHODOLOGY

1.1 Scope and Objectives

The Applicant, AMDA November (Pty) Ltd, is proposing the construction of a photovoltaic (PV) solar energy facility known as Roan 2, located on portions 4, 5, 9 and 16 of the Farm 299 approximately 3km south of Hartbeesfontein in the City of Matlosana local Municipality, which is located within the Dr Kenneth Kaunda District Municipality of the North-West Province of South Africa, as shown in **Figure 1-1**.

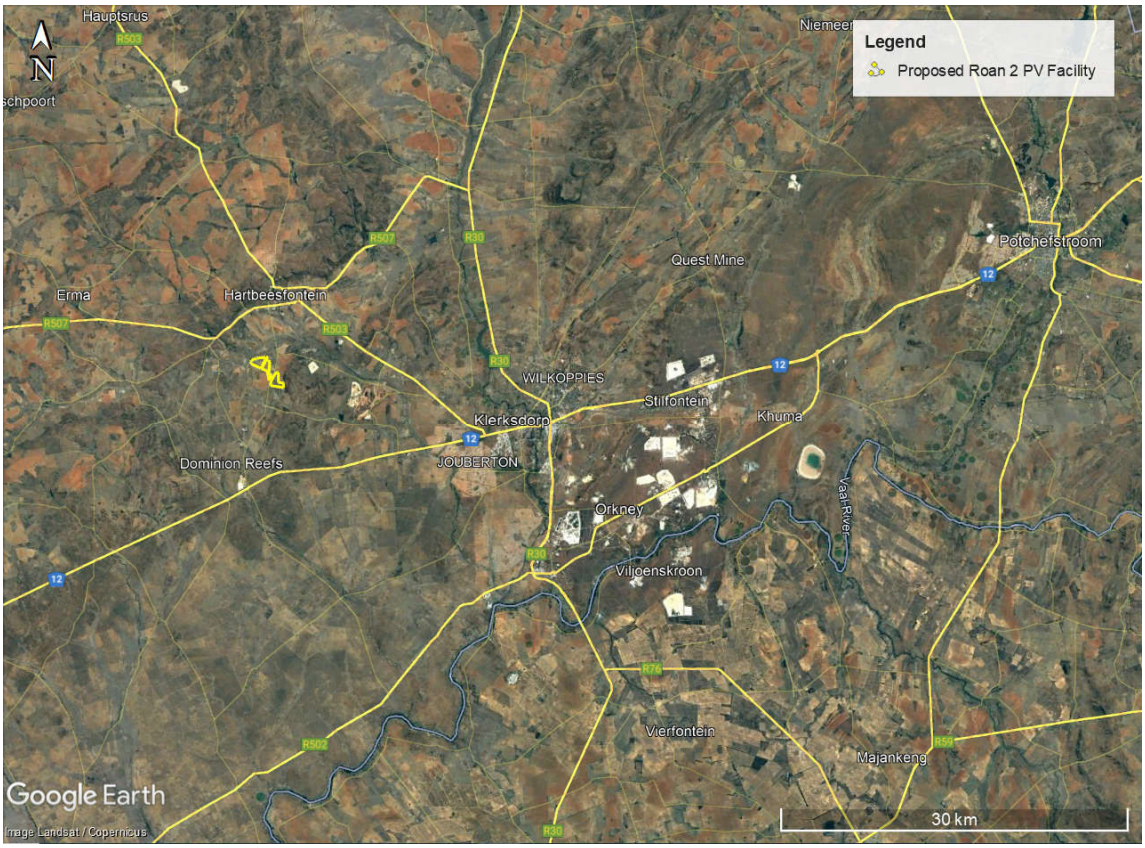


Figure 1-1: Locality Plan

The project is situated within a Renewable Energy Development Zone (REDZ) known as the Klerksdorp REDZ (REDZ10). The solar PV facility will comprise of arrays of PV panels and associated infrastructure and will have a contracted capacity of up to 100 MW.

As part of the Basic Assessment (BA) process undertaken, the services of a Transportation Specialist are required to conduct a Transport Study.

The following two main transportation activities will be investigated:

- Abnormal load vehicles transporting components to the site.
- The transportation of construction materials, equipment and people to and from the site/facility.

The transport study will aim to provide the following objectives:

- Assess activities related to traffic movement for the construction and operation (maintenance) phases of the facility.
- Recommend a preliminary route for the transportation of the components to the proposed site.
- Recommend a preliminary transportation route for the transportation of materials, equipment and people to site.
- Recommend alternative or secondary routes where possible.

1.2 Terms of Reference

The Terms of Reference for this Transport Study include the following:

- Provide a description of the environment that may be affected by the activity and the manner in which the environment may be affected by the proposed facility;
- Provide a description and assessment of the potential traffic issues associated with the proposed facility; and
- Identify enhancement and mitigation aimed at maximizing opportunities and avoiding and or reducing negative impacts.

The traffic impact assessment should focus on the aspects stated below:

- Location of the Site (Nearest numbered road indicated)
- Trip generation during construction and operation of the plant
- Probable haulage routes (national and provincial routes will be utilised)
- Site access route (from a national roadway)
- Affected communities
- Cumulative impact assessment.

1.3 Approach and Methodology

The report deals with the traffic impact on the surrounding road network in the vicinity of the site:

- during the construction of the access roads;
- construction of the facility; and
- operation and maintenance during the operational phase.

This transport study was informed by the following:

Site Visit and Project Assessment

- Overview of project background information including location maps, component specs and any possible resulting abnormal loads to be transported; and
- Research of all available documentation and information relevant to the proposed facility.

The transport study considered and assessed the following:

Traffic and Haul Route Assessment

- Estimation of trip generation;
- Discussion on potential traffic impacts;
- Assessment of possible haul routes; and
- Construction and operational (maintenance) vehicle trips.

Site layout, Access Points and Internal Roads Assessment per Site

- Description of the surrounding road network;
- Description of site layout;
- Assessment of the proposed access points; and
- Assessment of the proposed internal roads on site.

1.4 Assumptions and Limitations

The following assumptions and limitations apply:

- This study is based on the project information provided by AMDA November (Pty) Ltd.
- According to the Eskom Specifications for Power Transformers (Eskom Power Series, Volume 5: Theory, Design, Maintenance and Life Management of Power Transformers), the following dimensional limitations need to be kept when transporting the transformer – total maximum height 5 000 mm, total maximum width 4 300 mm and total maximum length 10 500 mm.
- Maximum vertical height clearances along the haulage route are 5.2 m for abnormal loads.
- Imported elements will be transported from the most feasible port of entry, which is deemed to be Port of Richards Bay.
- If any elements are manufactured within South Africa, these will be transported from their respective manufacturing centres, which would be either in the greater Johannesburg area for the transformer, inverter and the support

structures and in Pinetown/Durban, Cape Town or Johannesburg for the PV modules.

- All haulage trips will occur on either surfaced national and provincial roads or existing gravel roads.
- Construction materials will be sourced locally as far as possible.

1.5 Source of Information

Information used in a transport study includes:

- Project Information provided by AMDA November (Pty) Ltd;
- Google Earth .kmz provided by AMDA November (Pty) Ltd;
- Google Earth Satellite Imagery; and
- Project research of all available information, including photographic record of proposed assess points provided by Cape EPrac.

2 DESCRIPTION OF PROJECT ASPECTS RELEVANT TO THE TRANSPORT STUDY

2.1 Port of Entry

It is assumed that if components are imported to South Africa, it will be via the Port of Richards Bay, which is located in the KwaZulu Natal. The Port is located approximately 760 km from the proposed site. A deep-sea water port and boasting 13 berths, the Richards Bay terminal handles dry bulk ores, minerals and break-bulk consignments with a draft that easily accommodates Cape size and Panamax vessels.

The terminal exports over 30 varied commodities from magnetite to ferrochrome, woodchips to aluminium and steel. A large percentage of dry bulk commodities are handled via a computer-controlled network of conveyor belts extending 40 km to seven harbour bound industries. These belts transport cargo between the quayside and the respective manufacturers. Break bulk cargo, on the other hand, is a skip-loading operation that due to the density of the commodities primarily relies on road motor transport (RMT) to and from the point of trade. The Richards Bay Port is operated by Transnet Port Terminals.

Alternatively, components can be imported via the Port of Saldanha (1 310 km from the proposed site) in the Western Cape or the Port of Ngqura (940 km from the proposed site) in Eastern Cape.

2.2 Transportation requirements

It is anticipated that the following vehicles will access the site during construction:

- Conventional trucks within the freight limitations to transport building material to the site;
- 40ft container trucks transporting solar PV modules, frames and the inverter, which are within freight limitations;
- Flatbed trucks transporting the solar PV modules and frames, which are within the freight limitations;
- Light Differential Vehicle (LDV) type vehicles transporting workers from surrounding areas to site;
- Drilling and piling machines and other required construction machinery being transported by conventional trucks or via self-drive to site; and
- The transformers will be transported as abnormal loads.

2.3 Abnormal Load Considerations

It is expected that the transformers will be transported with an abnormal load vehicle. Abnormal permits are required for vehicles exceeding the following permissible maximum dimensions on road freight transport in terms of the Road Traffic Act (Act No. 93 of 1996) and the National Road Traffic Regulations, 2000:

- Length: 22 m for an interlink, 18.5 m for truck and trailer and 13.5 m for a single unit truck
- Width: 2.6 m
- Height: 4.3 m measured from the ground. Possible height of load – 2.7 m.
- Weight: Gross vehicle mass of 56 t resulting in a payload of approximately 30 t
- Axle unit limitations: 18 t for dual and 24 t for triple-axle units
- Axle load limitation: 7.7 t on the front axle and 9 t on the single or rear axles

Any dimension / mass outside the above will be classified as an Abnormal Load and will necessitate an application to the Department of Transport and Public Works for a permit that will give authorisation for the conveyance of said load. A permit is required for each Province that the haulage route traverses.

2.4 Further Guideline Documentation

The Technical Recommendations for Highways (TRH 11): "Draft Guidelines for Granting of Exemption Permits for the Conveyance of Abnormal Loads and for other Events on Public Roads" outlines the rules and conditions that apply to the transport of abnormal loads and vehicles on public roads and the detailed procedures to be followed in applying for exemption permits are described and discussed. Legal axle load limits and the restrictions imposed on abnormally heavy loads are discussed in relation to the damaging effect on road pavements, bridges and culverts.

The general conditions, limitations and escort requirements for abnormally dimensioned loads and vehicles are also discussed and reference is made to speed restrictions, power / mass ratio, mass distribution and general operating conditions for abnormal loads and vehicles. Provision is also made for the granting of permits for all other exemptions from the requirements of the Road Traffic Act and the relevant regulations.

2.5 Permitting – General Rules

The limits recommended in TRH 11 are intended to serve as a guide to the Permit Issuing Authorities. It must be noted that each Administration has the right to refuse a permit application or to modify the conditions under which a permit is granted. It is understood that:

a) A permit is issued at the sole discretion of the Issuing Authority. The permit may be refused because of the condition of the road, the culverts and bridges, the nature of other traffic on the road, abnormally heavy traffic during certain periods or for any other reason.
b) A permit can be withdrawn if the vehicle upon inspection is found in any way not fit to be operated.

c) During certain periods, such as school holidays or long weekends an embargo may be placed on the issuing or permits. Embargo lists are compiled annually and are obtainable from the Issuing Authorities.

2.6 Load Limitations

The maximum load that a road vehicle or combination of vehicles will be allowed to carry legally under permit on a public road is limited by:

- the capacity of the vehicles as rated by the manufacturer;
- the load which may be carried by the tyres;
- the damaging effect on pavements;
- the structural capacity on bridges and culverts;
- the power of the prime mover(s);
- the load imposed by the driving axles; and
- the load imposed by the steering axles.

2.7 Dimensional Limitations

A load of abnormal dimensions may cause an obstruction and danger to other traffic. For this reason, all loads must, as far as possible, conform to the legal dimensions. Permits will only be considered for indivisible loads, i.e. loads that cannot, without disproportionate effort, expense or risk of damage, be divided into two or more loads for the purpose of transport on public roads. For each of the characteristics below there is a legally permissible limit and what is allowed under permit:

- Width;
- Height;
- Length;
- Front Overhang;
- Rear Overhang;
- Front Load Projection;
- Rear Load Projection;
- Wheelbase;
- Turning Radius; and
- Stability of Loaded Vehicles.

2.8 Transporting Other Plant, Material and Equipment

In addition to transporting the specialised equipment, the normal Civil Engineering construction materials, plant and equipment will need to be transported to the site (e.g. sand, stone, cement, gravel, water, compaction equipment, concrete mixers, etc.). Other components, such as electrical cables, pylons and substation transformers, will also be transported to site during construction. The transport of these items will generally be

conducted with normal heavy loads vehicles, except for the transformers which require an abnormal load vehicle.

3 DESCRIPTION OF THE AFFECTED ENVIRONMENT

3.1 Description of the site

The proposed Roan 2 PV Facility will be located approximately 3 km south of the town of Hartbeesfontein and 26 km north-west of the town of Klerksdorp in the North-west Province, as shown in **Figure 3-1**. The proposed site is bounded by the R507 to the north, the R503 to the east and the N12 to the south. The project is situated within a Renewable Energy Development Zone (REDZ) known as the Klerksdorp REDZ (REDZ10).

The following farm portions are affected:

Solar Power Plant

- Portion No 4 of The Farm No. 299
- Portion No 5 of The Farm No. 299
- Portion No 9 of The Farm No. 299
- Portion No 16 of The Farm No. 299

132 kV Power Line

- The Farm No. 337
- Remainder portion of the Farm No. 338

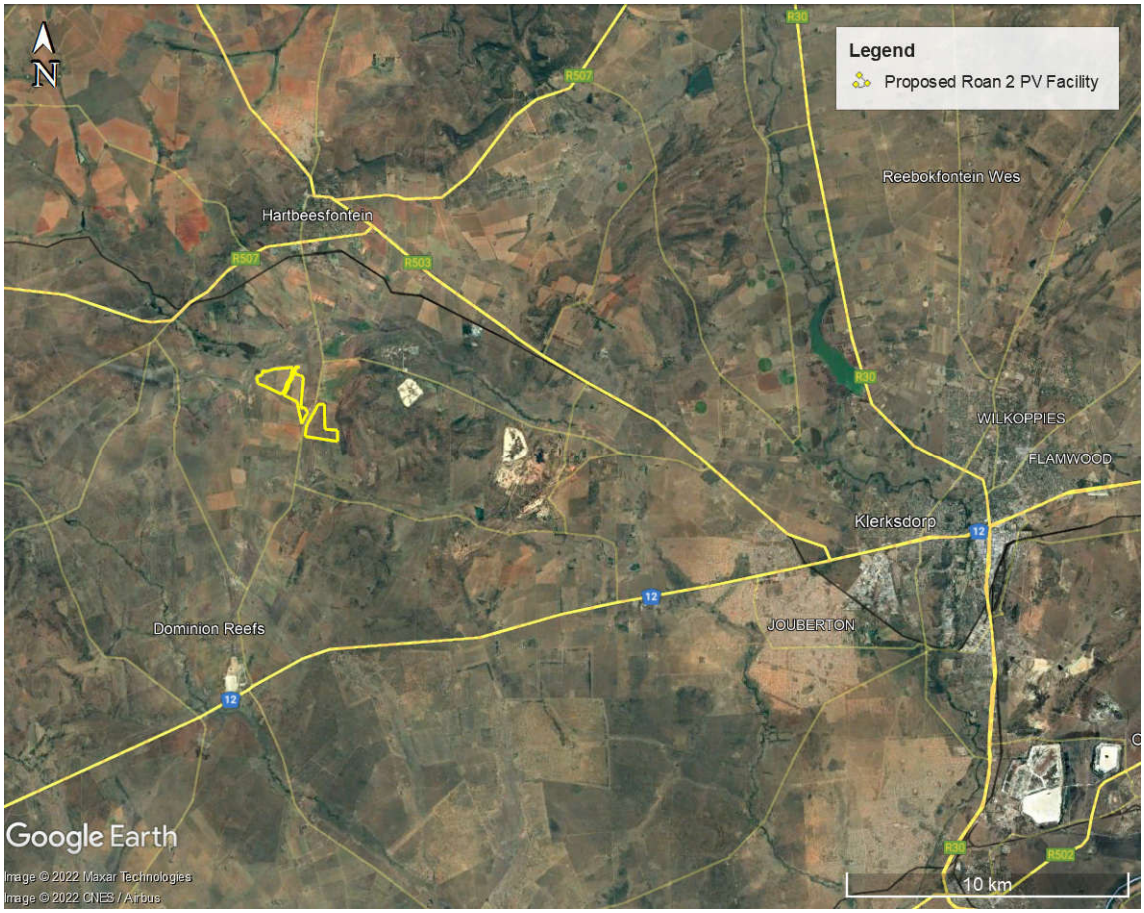


Figure 3-1: Aerial View of the Proposed Roan 2 PV Facility

A development footprint of approximately 250 ha is being assessed as part of the Basic Assessment Report (BAR) and the infrastructure associated with the 100 MW facility includes:

- PV modules and mounting structures;
- Inverters and transformers;
- Cabling;
- Battery Energy Storage System (BESS);
- Site and internal access roads (up to 8m wide);
- Auxiliary buildings (33 kV switch room, gate-house and security, control centre, office, warehouse, canteen & visitors centre, staff lockers etc.);
- Perimeter fencing and security infrastructure;
- Rainwater tanks;
- Temporary and permanent laydown areas;
- Facility substation; and
- Grid connection solution, including:
    - On-site facility substation
    - On-site Eskom Switching station
    - Over-head powerline (up to 132 kV) from the on-site switching station to the Existing Eskom Roan Substation

Additional associated infrastructure will also be required for the grid connection solution, including access roads, feeder bays (inclusive of line bays, busbars, bus section and protection equipment), a fibre and optical ground wire (OPGW) layout, insulation and assembly structures.

A grid connection corridor of approximately 300 m wide is being assessed to allow for the optimisation of the grid connection and associated infrastructure. The grid connection infrastructure will be developed within the 300m wide grid connection corridor, which will allow for the avoidance of identified environmental sensitivities. The grid corridor will connect the PV project to the Eskom Roan Substation. The gridline servitude, once registered, will be 31m in width.

3.2 National Route to Site for Imported Components

There are three viable options for the port of entry for imported components – the Port of Richards Bay in KwaZulu Natal (760 km from the site), the Port of Ngqura in the Eastern Cape (940 km from the site) and the Port of Saldanha in the Western Cape (1 310 km from the site).

The Port of Richards Bay is the preferred port of entry, however, the Port of Saldanha and the Port of Ngqura can be used as alternatives should the Port of Richards Bay not be available.

The preferred route from the Port of Richards Bay is shown in blue in **Figure 3-2** below. The route starts at the Port and primarily follows the R34 to Heilbron. Vehicles will head north-west on the R720 before turning west at Vredefort onto the R59. Vehicles will access the R76 at Viljoenskroon which leads to the R30 into Klerksdorp. Vehicles will head north-west on the R503 before turning off onto D842 and then D860 that are both surfaced roads that access the proposed site. To access the western-most portion of the facility, vehicles will carry on straight at the T-junction of D842 and D860 onto an unnumbered gravel road.

The alternative route from the Port of Saldanha, shown in orange in **Figure 3-2**, will follow the R45 east to Moorreesburg before taking the R46 east to Ceres. Vehicles will head east on the N1, passing Beaufort West before turning onto the N12 at Three Sisters. Vehicles will travel north-east, accessing the D860, a surfaced road, leading to the proposed site.

The alternative route from the Port of Ngqura, shown in green in **Figure 3-2**, will follow the N10 north to Cradock. Vehicles will follow the R390 and the R58 to the N1 at the Gariepdam. Vehicles will turn onto the R700 at Bloemfontein and will travel north-east, accessing the R719 at Buitfontein and the R30 near Bothaville before accessing the R503 at Klerksdorp and then the D842 and D860, that lead to the proposed site.

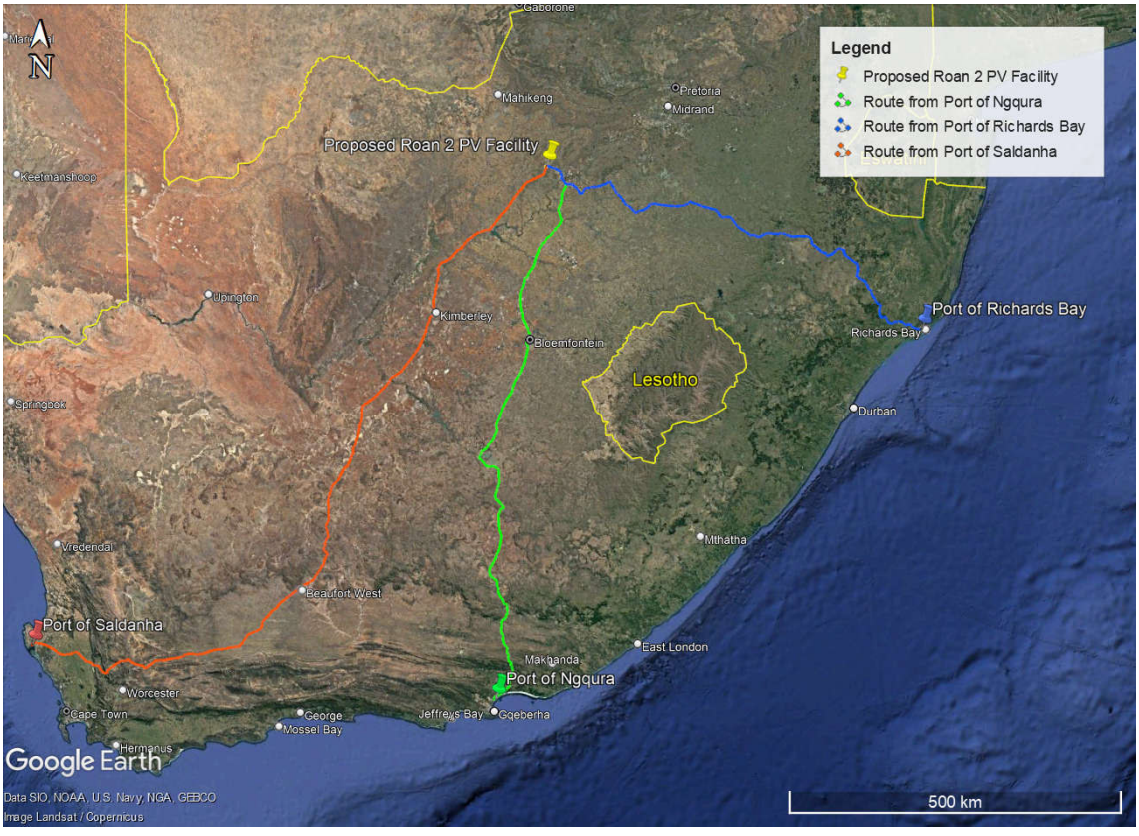


Figure 3-2: Preferred and Alternative Routes

It is critical to ensure that the abnormal load vehicle will be able to move safely and without obstruction along the preferred route. The preferred route should be surveyed prior to construction to identify any problem areas, e.g. intersections with limited turning radii and sections of the road with sharp horizontal curves or steep gradients, that may require modification. After the road modifications have been implemented, it is recommended to undertake a "dry-run" with the largest abnormal load vehicle, prior to the transportation of any components, to ensure that the delivery will occur without disruptions.

It needs to be ensured that any gravel sections of the haulage routes remain in good condition and will need to be maintained during the additional loading of the construction phase and reinstated after construction is completed.

3.3 Route for Components manufactured locally

As mentioned in Section 1.4 (Assumptions and Limitations), it is anticipated that elements manufactured within South Africa will be transported to the site from the Cape Town, Johannesburg and Pinetown/Durban areas. It is also assumed that the transformer, which will be transported with an abnormal load vehicle, will be transported from the Johannesburg area and therefore it needs to be verified that the route from the manufacturer to the site does not have any load limitations for abnormal vehicles. At this stage, only a high-level assessment can be undertaken as no information of the exact location of the manufacturer is known and all road structures (such as bridges and culverts) need to be confirmed for their load bearing by the South African National Roads Agency (SANRAL) or the respective Roads Authority.

3.4 Route from Cape Town to Proposed Site

Components, such as PV modules, manufactured in Cape Town will be transported to site via road as shown in **Figure 3-3**. Haulage vehicles will travel from Cape Town on the N1 and the N12, passing Laingsburg, Beaufort West, Three Sisters, Kimberley, and Bloemhof.

Haulage vehicles will mainly travel on national highways and the total distance to the proposed site is approximately 1 260 km.

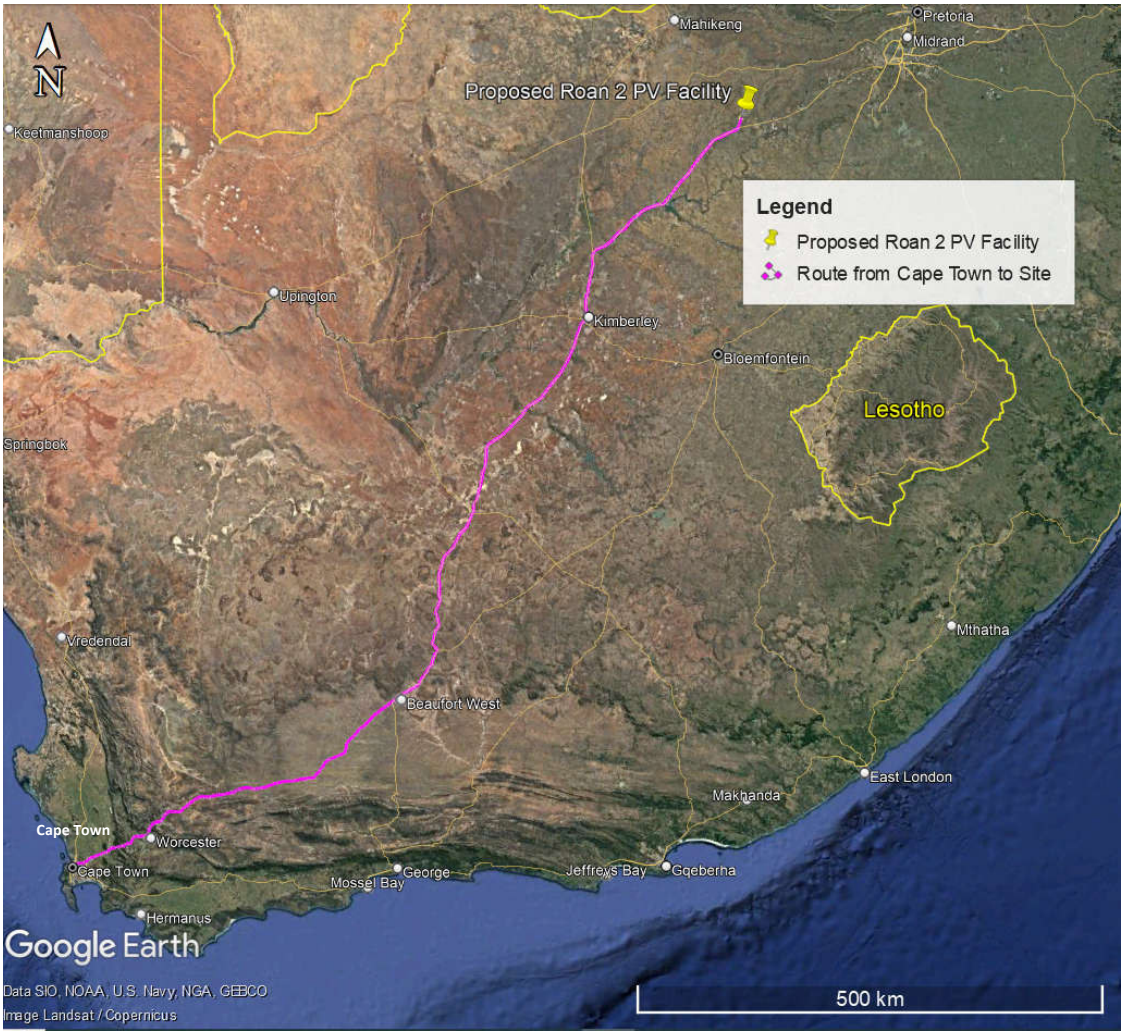


Figure 3-3: Route from Cape Town to Proposed Site

3.5 Route from Johannesburg to Proposed Site

It is assumed that the inverter and support structure will be manufactured in the Johannesburg area and transported to site via the N12 and the R503. The travel distance is around 195 km and no road limitations are expected on this route for normal loads vehicles as it will mainly follow national and provincial roads. The route is shown in **Figure** 3-4.

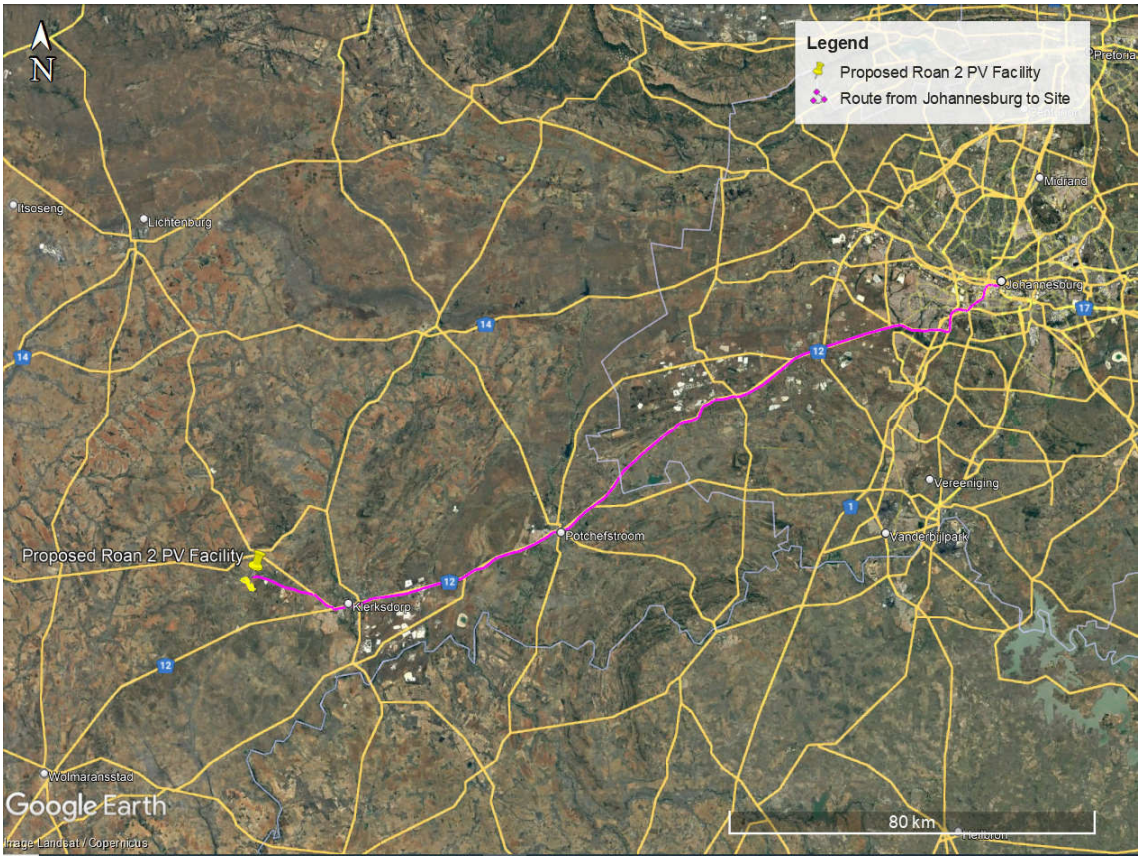


Figure 3-4: Route from Johannesburg to Proposed Site

3.6 Route from Pinetown / Durban to Proposed Site

If the PV modules are manufactured in South Africa, they could possibly be manufactured in the Pinetown area, close to Durban and transported to site via road. These elements are normal loads, and no road limitations are expected along the routes, which is shown **Figure** 3-5. Haulage vehicles will mainly travel on national and provincial roads and the total distance to the proposed site is approximately 650 km.

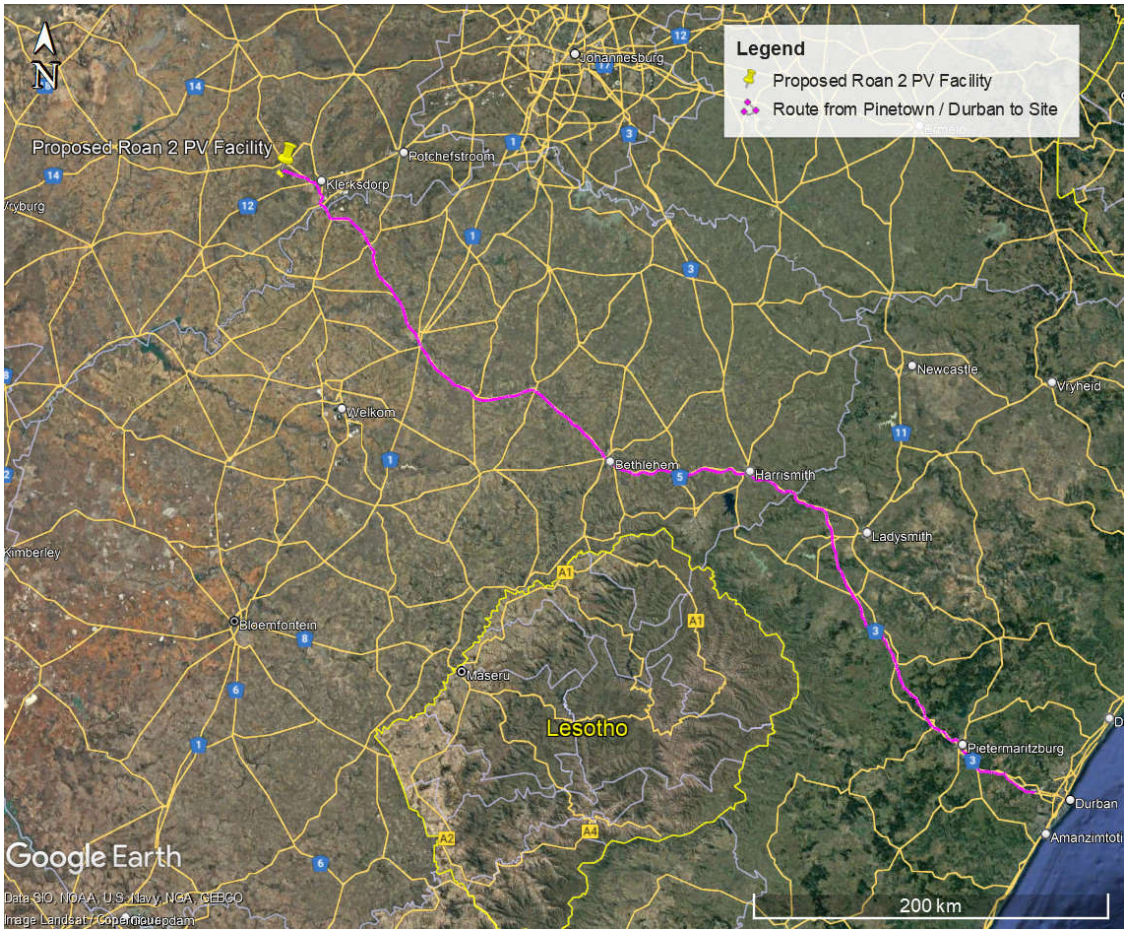


Figure 3-5: Route from Pinetown / Durban to Proposed Site

3.7 Route from Johannesburg Area to Site – Abnormal Load

It is assumed that the transformer will be manufactured locally in South Africa and be transported from the Johannesburg area to site. As the transformer will be transported with an abnormal load vehicle, the route planning needs a more detailed investigation of the feasible routes considering any limitations due to existing road features. Furthermore, a load of abnormal dimensions may cause an obstruction and danger to other traffic and therefore the transformer needs to be transported as far as possible on roads that are wide enough for general traffic to pass. It is expected that the transformer can be transported to site via the same route used for normal loads.

There are several bridges and culverts along this route, which need to be confirmed for load bearing and height clearances. There are several turns along the way and small towns to pass through. According to the desktop study, all turning movements along the route are manageable for the abnormal vehicle.

However, there are many alternative routes which can be investigated if the above route or sections of the route should not be feasible.

3.8 Proposed main access road and access point to the Proposed Development

The main access points for the site will be obtained via the D860 surfaced road (shown in blue in **Figure** 3-6) located between the R507 in the north, and the N12 in the south. An internal site road network will also be required to provide access to the solar field and associated infrastructure.

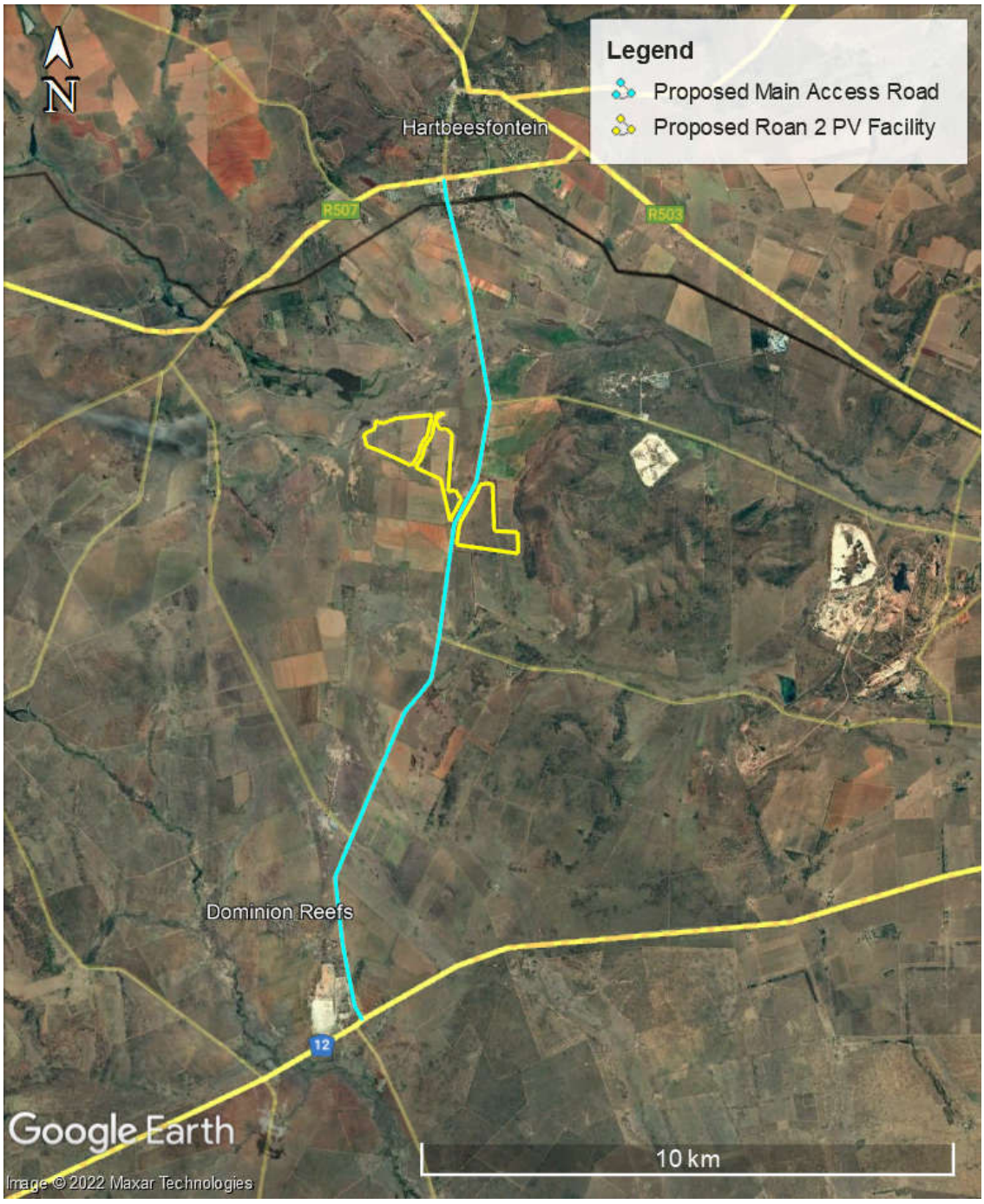


Figure 3-6: Proposed Main Access Road

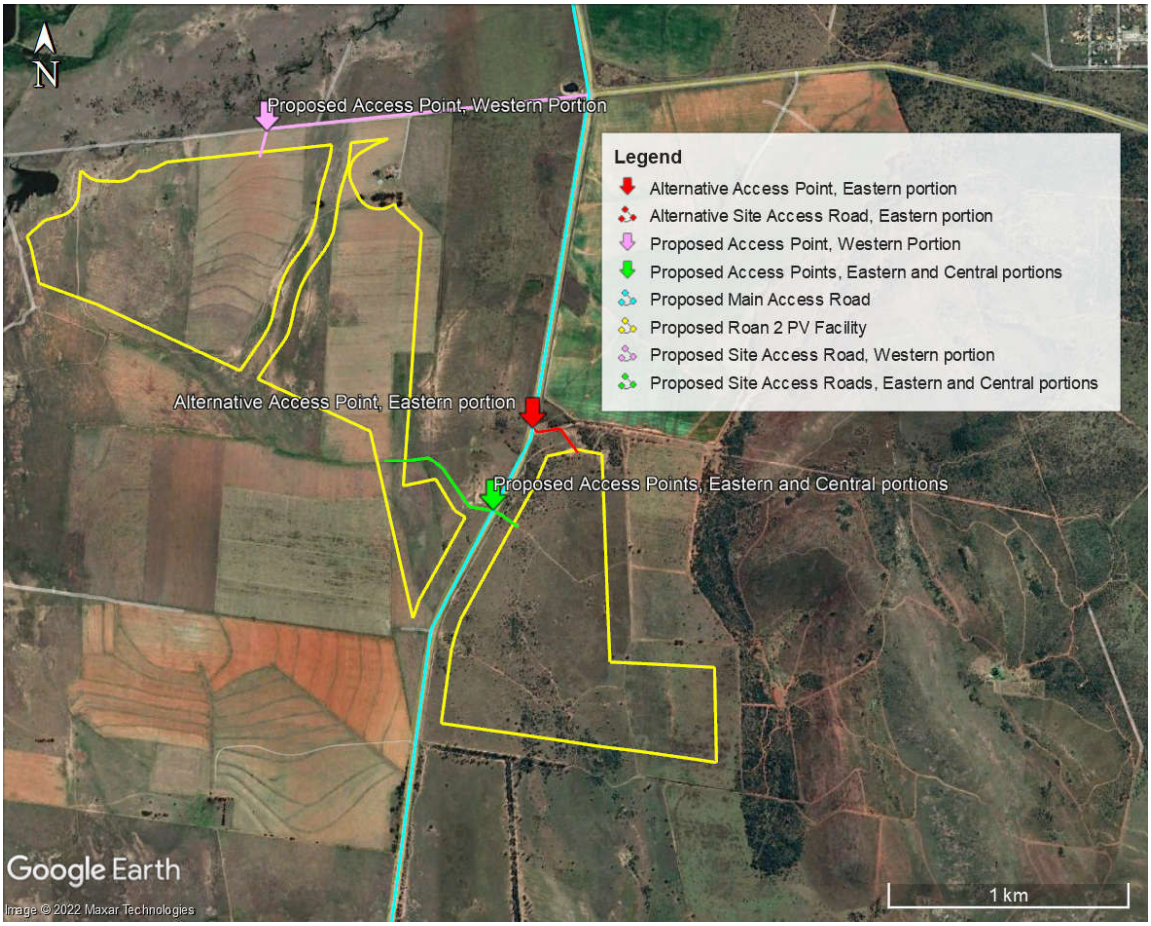


Figure 3-7: Proposed Site Access Roads and Access Points

The proposed access points, as shown in **Figure 3-7**, will need to be upgraded to cater for construction and abnormal load vehicles. Generally, the road width at the access point needs to be a minimum of 8 m. The radius at the access point needs to be large enough to allow for all construction vehicles to turn safely. It is recommended that the access point be surfaced and the internal access roads on site remain gravel.

An alternative site access road and access point was considered for the eastern portion (shown in red in **Figure 3-7**). However, this option is less ideal as the proposed access is skew on the main access road (shown in blue) which might cause reduction in the visibility of oncoming traffic.

The type of access control will determine the required stacking distance. The stacking distance is measured between the access boom and the kerb/road edge of the external road. For example, for a boom-controlled access, this boom will need to be moved sufficiently into the site to allow for at least one abnormal vehicle to stack in front of the boom without impeding on external traffic. It is recommended that the site access be controlled via a boom and gatehouse. It is also recommended that security staff be stationed on site at the access booms during construction. A minimum stacking distance of 25 m should be provided between the road edge of the external road and the boom.

Any geometric design constraints should be taken into consideration by the geometric designer. The internal roads need to be designed with smooth, relatively flat gradients (recommended to be no more than 8%). It should be noted that turning radii of all roads must conform to the specifications needed for the abnormal load vehicles and haulage vehicles. It needs to be ensured that the gravel sections of the haulage routes remain in good condition and will hence need to be maintained during the additional loading of the construction phase and then reinstated after construction is completed. The gravel roads will require grading with a grader to obtain camber of between 3% and 4% (to facilitate drainage) and regular maintenance blading will also be required. The geometric design of these gravel roads needs to be confirmed at detailed design stage.

3.9 Main Route for the Transportation of Materials, Plant and People to the proposed site

The nearest towns in relation to the proposed development site are Hartbeesfontein, Klerksdorp, Orkney, Stilfontein, Viljoenskroon and Potchefstroom. It is envisaged that most materials, water, plant, services and people will be procured within a 70 km radius of the proposed facility.

Concrete batch plants and quarries in the vicinity could be contracted, where reasonable and feasible, to supply materials and concrete during the construction phase, which would reduce the impact on traffic on the surrounding road network. Alternatively, mobile concrete batch plants and temporary construction material stockpile yards could be commissioned on vacant land near the proposed site. Delivery of materials to the mobile batch plant and the stockpile yard could be staggered to minimise traffic disruptions.

4 APPLICABLE LEGISLATION AND PERMIT REQUIREMENTS

Key legal requirements pertaining to the transport requirements for the proposed development are:

- Abnormal load permits, (Section 81 of the National Road Traffic Act)
- Port permit (Guidelines for Agreements, Licenses and Permits in terms of the National Ports Act No. 12 of 2005), and
- Authorisation from Road Authorities to modify the road reserve to accommodate turning movements of abnormal loads at intersections.

5 IDENTIFICATION OF KEY ISSUES

5.1 Identification of Potential Impacts

The potential transport related impacts are described below.

5.1.1 Construction Phase

Potential impact

- Construction related traffic
- The construction traffic would also lead to noise and dust pollution.
- This phase also includes, in addition to the PV facility, the construction of access roads, feeder bays (inclusive of line bays, busbars, bus-section and protection equipment), a fibre and optical ground wire (OPGW) layout, insulation and assembly structures and other ancillary construction works that will temporarily generate the most traffic.

5.1.2 Operational Phase

During operation, it is expected that staff and security will periodically visit the facility. It is assumed that approximately 20 full-time employees will be stationed on site. The traffic generated during this phase will be minimal and will not have an impact on the surrounding road network.

5.1.3 Cumulative Impacts

- Traffic congestion/delays on the surrounding road network.
- Noise and dust pollution

6 ASSESSMENT OF IMPACTS AND IDENTIFICATION OF MANAGEMENT ACTIONS

6.1 Potential Impact (Construction Phase)

6.1.1 Nature of the impact

- Potential traffic congestion and delays on the surrounding road network and associated noise and dust pollution.

6.1.2 Significance of impact without mitigation measures

- Traffic generated by the construction of the facility will have a significant impact on the surrounding road network. The exact number of trips generated during construction will be determined by the contractor, the haulage company transporting the components to site, the staff requirements and where equipment is sourced from.

6.1.3 Trip Generation – Construction Phase

From experience on other projects of similar nature, the number of heavy vehicles per 7 MW installation is estimated to range between 200 and 300 trips depending on the site conditions and requirements. For the 100 MW, the total trips can therefore be estimated to be between 2 858 and 4 286 heavy vehicle trips, which will generally be made over an 18-month construction period. Choosing the worst-case scenario of 4 286 heavy vehicles over an 18-month period travelling on an average of 22 working days per month, the resulting daily number of vehicle trips is 11. In a rural environment, traffic during the peak hour accounts for roughly 20-40% of the average daily traffic i.e. 20-40% of the daily 11 vehicle trips generated by the facility will travel during the peak hour. This amounts to between 3 and 5 trips.

If the modules are imported instead of manufactured within South Africa, the respective shipping company will be able to indicate how the panels can be packed (for example using 2 MW packages and 40 ft containers). These can be stored at the port and repacked onto flatbed trucks.

It is assumed that during the peak of the construction period, 400 employees will be active on site. Staff trips are assumed to be:

Table 6-1: Estimation of daily staff trips

Vehicle Type	Number of vehicles	Number of Employees
Car	20	30 (assuming 1.5 occupants)
Bakkie	40	60 (assuming 1.5 occupants)
Taxi – 15 seats	10	150
Bus – 80 seats	2	160
Total	**72**	**400**

It is difficult to accurately estimate the construction traffic for the transportation of materials as it depends on the type of vehicles, tempo of the construction, source/location of construction material etc. However, it is assumed that at the peak of construction, approximately 150 construction vehicle trips will access the site per day.

The total estimated daily site trips are shown in the table below.

Table 6-2: Estimation of daily site trips

Activity	Number of trips
Staff trips	72
Component delivery	17
Construction trips	150
Total	**239**

The impact on general traffic on the surrounding road network is therefore deemed nominal as the 239 trips will be distributed across a 9 hr working day. The majority of the trips will occur outside the peak hours.

The significance of the transport impact without mitigation measures during the construction phase can be rated as medium. However, considering that this is temporary and short term in nature, the impact can be mitigated to an acceptable level.

6.1.4 Trip Generation – Operational Phase

During operation, it is assumed that approximately 20 full-time employees will be stationed on site and hence vehicle trips generated are low and will have a negligible impact on the external road network.

The developer is investigating the use of borehole water for the cleaning of the PV panels. Should borehole water not be available or suitable, the following assumptions have been made to estimate the resulting trips generated from transporting water to the site:

- 5 000 litre water bowsers to be used for transporting the water.
- Approximately 5 litres of water needed per module.
- Assuming that 174 360 solar modules are used, this would amount to approximately 175 vehicle trips to clean all the panels.
- Cleaning of modules will occur over a few days.
- Modules will be cleaned a maximum of four times a year.

It is expected that these trips will not have a significant impact on external traffic. However, to limit the impact, it is recommended to schedule these trips outside of peak traffic periods and to arrange for the cleaning of panels to occur over a few days e.g. should modules be cleaned over a period of two weeks, vehicle trips to the facility will amount to

less than 20 trips per day. These trips can be accommodated by the existing road network without impacting the existing capacity. Additionally, the provision of rainwater tanks on site would decrease the number of trips required to haul water to the site.

6.1.5 Proposed general mitigation measures

The following are general mitigation measures to reduce the impact that the additional traffic will have on the road network and the environment.

- The delivery of components to the site can be staggered and trips can be scheduled to occur outside of peak traffic periods.
- Dust suppression of gravel roads (including internal roads and any gravel roads off the N12, R503 and R507 used for project purposes) during the construction phase, as required.
- Regular maintenance of gravel roads (including internal roads and any gravel roads off the N12, R503 and R507 used for project purposes) by the Contractor during the construction phase and by the Owner/Facility Manager during the operation phase.
- The use of mobile batch plants and quarries near the site would decrease the traffic impact on the surrounding road network, where available and feasible.
- If required, low hanging overhead lines (lower than 5.1 m) e.g. Eskom and Telkom lines, along the proposed routes will have to be moved by the haulage company to accommodate the abnormal load vehicles. The Developer is to notify the Contractor and the haulage company of this requirement. The haulage company is to provide evidence of completed work.
- The preferred route should be surveyed to identify problem areas (e.g. intersections with limited turning radii and sections of the road with sharp horizontal curves or steep gradients, that may require modification). After the road modifications have been implemented, it is recommended to undertake a "dry-run" with the largest abnormal load vehicle, prior to the transportation of any components, to ensure that delivery will occur without disruptions. This process is to be undertaken by the haulage company transporting the components and the contractor, who will modify the road and intersections to accommodate abnormal vehicles. It needs to be ensured that any gravel sections of the haulage routes (including internal roads and any gravel roads off the N12, R503 and R507 used for project purposes) remain in good condition and will need to be maintained during the additional loading of the construction phase and reinstated after construction is completed.
- The Developer is to notify the Contractor and the haulage company of this requirement.
- Design and maintenance of internal roads. The internal gravel roads will require grading with a grader to obtain a camber of between 3% and 4% (to facilitate drainage) and regular maintenance blading will also be required. The geometric

design of these gravel roads needs to be confirmed at detailed design stage. This process is to be undertaken by a civil engineering consultant or a geometric design professional.

- Staff and general trips should occur outside of peak traffic periods as far as possible during both the construction and operational phases.
- Cleaning of modules during the operational phase could occur over a few days and should take place outside of peak traffic periods. Additionally, the provision of rainwater tanks on site should be considered to decrease the number of trips required to deliver water to the site for the cleaning of the panels.

6.1.6 Significance of impact with mitigation measures

The proposed mitigation measures for the construction traffic will result in a minor reduction of the impact on the surrounding road network, but the impact on the local traffic will remain moderate as the existing traffic volumes are deemed to be low. The dust suppression, however, will result in significantly reducing the impact.

The proposed mitigation measures for the operational traffic will result in a very low impact on the existing traffic on the surrounding road network.

7 NO-GO ALTERNATIVE

The no-go alternative implies that the proposed Roan 2 PV Facility does not proceed. This would mean that there will be no negative environmental impacts and no traffic impact on the surrounding network.

The site is currently zoned for agricultural land use. Should the proposed activity not proceed, the site will remain unchanged and will continue to be used for agricultural purposes. The potential opportunity costs in terms of alternative land use income through rental for energy facility and the supporting social and economic development in the area would be lost if the status quo persist. **Hence, the no-go alternative is not a preferred alternative.**

8 IMPACT ASSESSMENT SUMMARY

The assessment of impacts and recommendation of mitigation measures as discussed above are collated in the tables below. The assessment methodology is attached as **Annexure A**.

Table 8-1: Impact Rating - Construction Phase – Traffic Congestion

Environmental Parameter	Traffic Congestion and the associated dust and noise pollution	
Nature of the impact:	Transport of equipment, material and staff to site will lead to congestion.	
	Without Mitigation	**Post Mitigation**
Geographical extent (E):	Local (2)	Local (2)
Probability (P):	Definite (4)	Probable (3)
Reversibility (R):	Completely Reversible (1)	Completely Reversible (1)
Irreplaceable loss of resources (I):	No loss (1)	No loss (1)
Duration (D):	Short Term (1)	Short Term (1)
Cumulative effect (C):	High cumulative impact (4)	High cumulative impact (4)
Intensity / Magnitude (M):	High (3)	Medium (2)
***Significance (S):**	**Negative medium impact (39)**	**Negative low impact (24)**
	*** calculated as S =(E+P+R+I+D+C)*M**	
Level of residual risk:	Low. Traffic will return to normal levels after construction is completed.	
Mitigation Measures	• Stagger component delivery to site • Reduce the construction period • The use of mobile batch plants and quarries in close proximity to the site • Staff and general trips should occur outside of peak traffic periods. • Regular maintenance of gravel roads by the Contractor during the construction phase and by Client/Facility Manager during operation phase.	

Table 8-2: Impact Rating - Operation Phase

IMPACT TABLE – OPERATION PHASE
The traffic generated during this phase will be negligible and will not have any impact on the surrounding road network.

Table 8-3: Impact Rating - Decommissioning Phase

IMPACT TABLE – DECOMMISSIONING PHASE
This phase will have the same impact as the Construction Phase i.e. traffic congestion, air pollution and noise pollution, as similar trips/movements are expected.

9 CUMULATIVE IMPACTS

To assess the cumulative impact, it was assumed that all proposed and authorized renewable energy projects within 30 km be constructed at the same time. This is a precautionary approach, as in reality these projects would be subject to a highly competitive bidding process. Only a handful of projects would be selected to enter into a power purchase agreement with Eskom, and construction is likely to be staggered depending on project-specific issues.

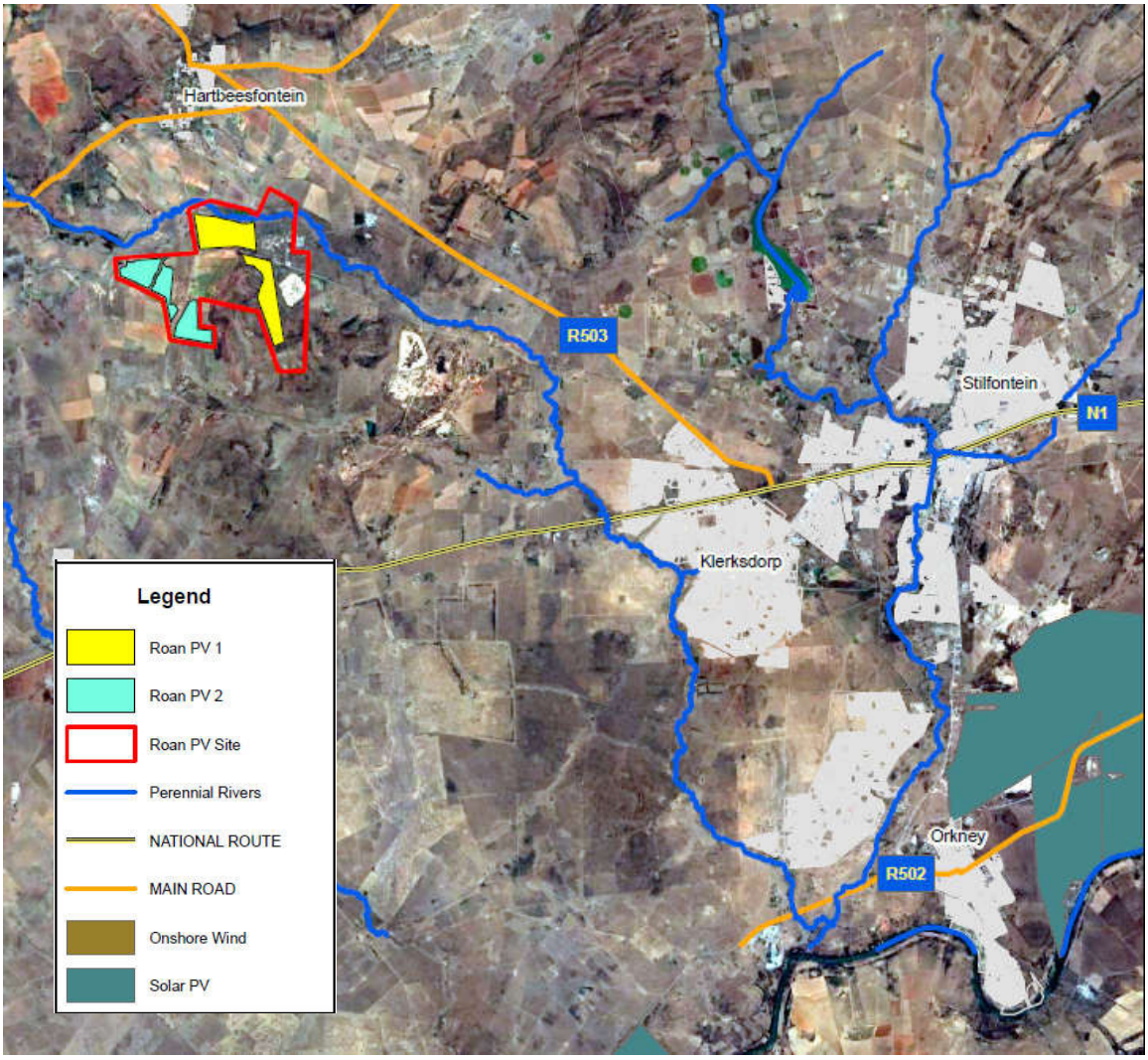


Figure 9-1: Other renewable energy projects within a 30km radius from site

According to the Department of Forestry, Fisheries and Environment's database there are two (2) authorised PV facilities within a 30km radius of the proposed study area, as indicated in **Figure 9-1** above.

It is however unclear whether other projects not related to renewable energy is or has been constructed in this area, and whether other projects are proposed. In general, development activity in the area is focused on agriculture and mining. It is quite possible that future solar farm development may take place within the general area.

9.1 Assessment of cumulative impacts

The construction and decommissioning phases are the only significant traffic generators for renewable energy projects. The duration of these phases is short term (i.e. the impact of the generated traffic on the surrounding road network is temporary and renewable energy facilities, when operational, do not add any significant traffic to the road network).

Even if all renewable energy projects within the area are constructed at the same time, the roads authority will consider all applications for abnormal loads and work with all project companies to ensure that loads on the public roads are staggered and staged to ensure that the impact will be acceptable.

The assessments of cumulative impacts are collated in the table below.

Table 9-1: Cumulative Impact

Environmental Parameter	Traffic Congestion and the associated dust and noise pollution	
Nature of the impact:	Transport of equipment, material and staff to site will lead to congestion.	
	Overall impact of the proposed project considered in isolation (post mitigation)	**Cumulative impact of the project and other projects in the area**
Geographical extent (E):	Local (2)	Provincial (3)
Probability (P):	Probable (3)	Probable (3)
Reversibility (R):	Completely Reversible (1)	Partly Reversible (2)
Irreplaceable loss of resources (I):	No loss (1)	No loss (1)
Duration (D):	Short Term (1)	Medium term (2)
Cumulative effect (C):	High cumulative impact (4)	High cumulative impact (4)
Intensity / Magnitude (M):	Medium (2)	High (3)
***Significance (S):**	**Negative low impact (24)**	**Negative medium impact (45)**
	*** calculated as S =(E+P+R+I+D+C)*M**	
Level of residual risk:	Low. Traffic will return to normal levels after construction is completed.	
Mitigation Measures	• Stagger component delivery to site • Reduce the construction period • The use of mobile batch plants and quarries in close proximity to the site • Staff and general trips should occur outside of peak traffic periods. • Regular maintenance of roads by the Contractor during the construction phase and by Client/Facility Manager during operation phase.	

10 ENVIRONMENTAL MANAGEMENT PROGRAM INPUTS

It is recommended that dust suppression and maintenance of gravel roads form part of the EMPr. This would be required during the Construction phase where an increase in vehicle trips can be expected. No traffic related mitigation measures are envisaged during the Operation phase due to the negligible traffic volume generated during this phase.

Table 10-1: EMPr Input – Construction Phase

Impact	**Mitigation/Management Objectives**	**Mitigation/Management Actions**	**Monitoring**		
			Methodology	***Frequency***	***Responsibility***
A. CONSTRUCTION PHASE					
A.1. TRAFFIC IMPACTS					
Dust and noise pollution Transportation of material, components, equipment and staff to site.	Minimize impacts on road network.	▪ Stagger component delivery to site. ▪ The use of mobile batch plants and quarries near the site would decrease the impact on the surrounding road network, where available and feasible. ▪ Dust suppression ▪ Reduce the construction period as far as possible. ▪ Maintenance of gravel roads (internal roads and	▪ Regular monitoring of road surface quality. ▪ Apply for required permits prior to commencement of construction.	▪ Before construction commences and regularly during construction phase.	▪ Holder of the EA.

Impact	Mitigation/Management Objectives	Mitigation/Management Actions	Monitoring		
			Methodology	***Frequency***	***Responsibility***
		any gravel roads off the N12, R503 and R507 used for project purposes). ▪ Apply for abnormal load permits prior to commencement of delivery via abnormal loads. ▪ Haulage company to assess the preferred route and undertake a 'dry run' to test. The Developer is to notify the haulage company (and the Contractor) of this requirement. ▪ Staff and general trips should occur outside of peak traffic periods as far as possible. ▪ Any low hanging overhead lines (lower than 5.1m) e.g. Eskom			

Impact	Mitigation/Management Objectives	Mitigation/Management Actions	Monitoring		
			Methodology	***Frequency***	***Responsibility***
		and Telkom lines, along the proposed routes will have to be moved by the haulage company to accommodate the abnormal load vehicles, if required. The Developer to notify the haulage company and Contractor of this requirement. The haulage company is to provide evidence of completed work.			

11 CONCLUSION AND RECOMMENDATIONS

The potential transport related impacts for the construction and operation phases for the proposed Roan 2 PV Facility were assessed.

- The construction phase traffic, although significant, will be temporary and impacts are considered to have a low significance after mitigation measures are implemented.
- During operation, it is expected that staff and security will periodically visit the facility. It is assumed that approximately 20 full-time employees will be stationed on site. The traffic generated during this phase will be minimal and will not have an impact on the surrounding road network.

The potential mitigation measures mentioned in the construction phase are:

- Dust suppression
- Component delivery to/ removal from the site can be staggered and trips can be scheduled to occur outside of peak traffic periods.
- The use of mobile batch plants and quarries near the site would decrease the impact on the surrounding road network.
- Staff and general trips should occur outside of peak traffic periods.
- A “dry run” of the preferred route.
- Design and maintenance of internal roads.
- If required, any low hanging overhead lines (lower than 5.1 m) e.g. Eskom and Telkom lines, along the proposed routes will have to be moved to accommodate the abnormal load vehicles.

The construction and decommissioning phases of a development is the only significant traffic generator and therefore noise and dust pollution will be higher during this phase. The duration of this phase is short term i.e. the impact of the traffic on the surrounding road network is temporary and a solar facility, when operational, does not add any significant traffic to the road network.

Both the proposed access point and the access road to the facility are deemed feasible from a traffic engineering perspective.

The development is supported from a transport perspective provided that the recommendations and mitigations contained in this report are adhered to.

The impacts associated with the proposed Roan 2 PV Facility are acceptable with the implementation of the recommended mitigation measures and can therefore be authorised.

12 REFERENCES

- Google Earth Pro
- SANS 10280/NRS 041-1:2008 - Overhead Power Lines for Conditions Prevailing in South Africa
- Road Traffic Act (Act No. 93 of 1996)
- National Road Traffic Regulations, 2000
- The Technical Recommendations for Highways (TRH 11): “Draft Guidelines for Granting of Exemption Permits for the Conveyance of Abnormal Loads and for other Events on Public Roads

13 ANNEXURES

Annexure A – ASSESSMENT METHODOLOGY

METHOD OF ENVIRONMENTAL ASSESSMENT

The environmental assessment aims to identify the various possible environmental impacts that could results from the proposed activity. Different impacts need to be evaluated in terms of its significance and in doing so highlight the most critical issues to be addressed. Significance is determined through a synthesis of impact characteristics which include context and intensity of an impact. Context refers to the geographical scale i.e., site, local, national or global whereas intensity is defined by the severity of the impact e.g., the magnitude of deviation from background conditions, the size of the area affected, the duration of the impact and the overall probability of occurrence. Significance is calculated as shown in Table 13-1.

Significance is an indication of the importance of the impact in terms of both physical extent and time scale, and therefore indicates the level of mitigation required. The total number of points scored for each impact indicates the level of significance of the impact.

Impact Rating System

Impact assessment must take account of the nature, scale and duration of impacts on the environment whether such impacts are positive or negative. Each impact is also assessed according to the project phases:

- planning
- construction
- operation
- decommissioning

Where necessary, the proposal for mitigation or optimisation of an impact should be detailed. A brief discussion of the impact and the rationale behind the assessment of its significance should also be included. The rating system is applied to the potential impacts on the receiving environment and includes an objective evaluation of the mitigation of the impact. In assessing the significance of each impact, the following criteria is used:

Table 13-1: The rating system

NATURE		
Include a brief description of the impact of environmental parameter being assessed in the context of the project. This criterion includes a brief written statement of the environmental aspect being impacted upon by a particular action or activity.		
GEOGRAPHICAL EXTENT		
This is defined as the area over which the impact will be experienced.		
1	Site	The impact will only affect the site.
2	Local/district	Will affect the local area or district.
3	Province/region	Will affect the entire province or region.
4	International and National	Will affect the entire country.
PROBABILITY		
This describes the chance of occurrence of an impact.		
1	Unlikely	The chance of the impact occurring is extremely low (Less than a 25% chance of occurrence).
2	Possible	The impact may occur (Between a 25% to 50% chance of occurrence).
3	Probable	The impact will likely occur (Between a 50% to 75% chance of occurrence).
4	Definite	Impact will certainly occur (Greater than a 75% chance of occurrence).
DURATION		
This describes the duration of the impacts. Duration indicates the lifetime of the impact as a result of the proposed activity.		
1	Short term	The impact will either disappear with mitigation or will be mitigated through natural processes in a span shorter than the construction phase (0 – 1 years), or the impact will last for the period of a relatively short construction period and a limited recovery time after construction, thereafter it will be entirely negated (0 – 2 years).
2	Medium term	The impact will continue or last for some time after the construction phase but will be mitigated by direct human action or by natural processes thereafter (2 – 10 years).
3	Long term	The impact and its effects will continue or last for the entire operational life of the development, but will be mitigated by direct human action or by natural processes thereafter (10 – 30 years).
4	Permanent	The only class of impact that will be non-transitory. Mitigation either by man or natural process will not occur in such a way or such a time span that the impact can be considered indefinite.
INTENSITY/ MAGNITUDE		
Describes the severity of an impact.		

1	Low	Impact affects the quality, use and integrity of the system/component in a way that is barely perceptible.
2	Medium	Impact alters the quality, use and integrity of the system/component but system/component still continues to function in a moderately modified way and maintains general integrity (some impact on integrity).
3	High	Impact affects the continued viability of the system/ component and the quality, use, integrity and functionality of the system or component is severely impaired and may temporarily cease. High costs of rehabilitation and remediation.
4	Very high	Impact affects the continued viability of the system/component and the quality, use, integrity and functionality of the system or component permanently ceases and is irreversibly impaired. Rehabilitation and remediation often impossible. If possible rehabilitation and remediation often unfeasible due to extremely high costs of rehabilitation and remediation.
REVERSIBILITY		
This describes the degree to which an impact can be successfully reversed upon completion of the proposed activity.		
1	Completely reversible	The impact is reversible with implementation of minor mitigation measures.
2	Partly reversible	The impact is partly reversible but more intense mitigation measures are required.
3	Barely reversible	The impact is unlikely to be reversed even with intense mitigation measures.
4	Irreversible	The impact is irreversible and no mitigation measures exist.
IRREPLACEABLE LOSS OF RESOURCES		
This describes the degree to which resources will be irreplaceably lost as a result of a proposed activity.		
1	No loss of resource	The impact will not result in the loss of any resources.
2	Marginal loss of resource	The impact will result in marginal loss of resources.
3	Significant loss of resources	The impact will result in significant loss of resources.
4	Complete loss of resources	The impact is result in a complete loss of all resources.
CUMULATIVE EFFECT		
This describes the cumulative effect of the impacts. A cumulative impact is an effect which in itself may not be significant but may become significant if added to other existing or potential impacts emanating from other similar or diverse activities as a result of the project activity in question.		

1	Negligible cumulative impact	The impact would result in negligible to no cumulative effects.
2	Low cumulative impact	The impact would result in insignificant cumulative effects.
3	Medium cumulative impact	The impact would result in minor cumulative effects.
4	High cumulative impact	The impact would result in significant cumulative effects

SIGNIFICANCE

Significance is determined through a synthesis of impact characteristics. Significance is an indication of the importance of the impact in terms of both physical extent and time scale, and therefore indicates the level of mitigation required. The calculation of the significance of an impact uses the following formula: (Extent + probability + reversibility + irreplaceability + duration + cumulative effect) x magnitude/intensity.

The summation of the different criteria will produce a non-weighted value. By multiplying this value with the magnitude/intensity, the resultant value acquires a weighted characteristic which can be measured and assigned a significance rating.

Points	Impact significance rating	Description
6 to 28	Negative low impact	The anticipated impact will have negligible negative effects and will require little to no mitigation.
6 to 28	Positive low impact	The anticipated impact will have minor positive effects.
29 to 50	Negative medium impact	The anticipated impact will have moderate negative effects and will require moderate mitigation measures.
29 to 50	Positive medium impact	The anticipated impact will have moderate positive effects.
51 to 73	Negative high impact	The anticipated impact will have significant effects and will require significant mitigation measures to achieve an acceptable level of impact.
51 to 73	Positive high impact	The anticipated impact will have significant positive effects.
74 to 96	Negative very high impact	The anticipated impact will have highly significant effects and are unlikely to be able to be mitigated adequately. These impacts could be considered "fatal flaws".
74 to 96	Positive very high impact	The anticipated impact will have highly significant positive effects.

Annexure B – SPECIALIST EXPERTISE

IRIS SIGRID WINK

Profession	Civil Engineer (Traffic & Transportation)
Position in Firm	Associate
Area of Specialisation	Manager: Traffic & Transportation Engineering
Qualifications	PrEng, MSc Eng (Civil & Transportation)
Years of Experience	20 Years
Years with Firm	10 Years

SUMMARY OF EXPERIENCE

Iris is a Professional Engineer registered with ECSA (20110156). She joined JG Afrika (Pty) Ltd. in 2012. Iris obtained a Master of Science degree in Civil Engineering in Germany and has more than 20 years of experience in a wide field of traffic and transport engineering projects. Iris left Germany in 2003 and has worked as a traffic and transport engineer in South Africa and Germany. She has technical and professional skills in traffic impact studies, public transport planning, non-motorised transport planning and design, design and development of transport systems, project planning and implementation for residential, commercial and industrial projects and providing conceptual designs for the abovementioned. She has also been involved with transport assessments for renewable energy projects and traffic safety audits.

PROFESSIONAL REGISTRATIONS & INSTITUTE MEMBERSHIPS

PrEng - Registered with the Engineering Council of South Africa No. 20110156
Registered Mentor with ECSA for the Cape Town Office of JG Afrika
MSAICE - Member of the South African Institution of Civil Engineers
ITSSA - Member of ITS SA (Intelligent Transport Systems South Africa)
SAWEA - Member of the South African Wind Energy Association
SARF - South African Road Federation: Committee Member of Council
IRF - Global Road Safety Audit Team Leader

EDUCATION

1996 - Matric – Matric (Abitur) – Carl Friedrich Gauss Schule, Hemmingen, Germany
1998 - Diploma as Draughtsperson – Lower Saxonian State Office for Road and Bridge Engineering
2003 - MSc Eng (Civil and Transportation) – Leibniz Technical University of Hanover, Germany

SPECIFIC EXPERIENCE (Selection)

JG Afrika (Pty) Ltd (Previously Jeffares & Green (Pty) Ltd)
2016 – Date
Position – Associate

- **Kudusberg Windfarm** – Transport study for the proposed Kudusberg Windfarm near Sutherland, Northern Cape – Client: G7 Renewable Energies

- **Kuruman Windfarm –** Transport study for the proposed Kuruman Windfarm in Kuruman, Northern Cape – Client: Mulilo Renewable Project Developments
- **Coega West Windfarm** – Transportation and Traffic Management Plan for the proposed Coega Windfarm in Coega, Port Elizabeth – Client: Electrawinds Coega
- **Traffic and Parking Audits** for the Suburb of Groenvallei in Cape Town – Client: City of Cape Town Department of Property Management.
- **Road Safety Audit** for the Upgrade of N1 Section 4 Monument River – Client: Aurecon on behalf of SANRAL
- **Sonop Windfarm** – Traffic Impact Assessment for the proposed Sonop Windfarm, Coega, Port Elizabeth – Client: Founders Engineering
- **Universal Windfarm** - Traffic Impact Assessment for the proposed Universal Windfarm, Coega, Port Elizabeth – Client: Founders Engineering
- **Road Safety Audit** for the Upgrade of N2 Section 8 Knysna to Wittedrift – Client: SMEC on behalf of SANRAL
- **Road Safety Audit** for the Upgrade of N1 Section 16 Zandkraal to Winburg South – Client: SMEC on behalf of SANRAL
- **Traffic and Road Safety Studies** for the Improvement of N7 Section 2 and Section 3 (Rooidraai and Piekenierskloof Pass) – Client: SANRAL
- **Road Safety Appraisal**s for Northern Region of Cape Town – Client: Aurecon on behalf of City of Cape Town (TCT)
- **Traffic Engineering Services** for the Enkanini Informal Settlement, Kayamandi - Client: Stellenbosch Municipality
- **Lead Traffic Engineer** for the Upgrade of a 150km Section of the National Route N2 from Kangela to Pongola in KwaZulu-Natal, Client: SANRAL
- **Traffic Engineering Services** for the Kosovo Informal Settlement (which is part of the Southern Corridor Upgrade Programme), Client: Western Cape Government
- **Traffic and Road Safety Studies** for the proposed Kosovo Informal Housing Development (part of the Southern Corridor Upgrade Program), Client: Western Cape Government.
- **Road Safety Audit** Stage 3 – Upgrade of the R573 Section 2 between Mpumalanga/Gauteng and Mpumalanga/Limpopo, Client: AECOM on behalf of SANRAL
- **Road Safety Audit** Stage 1 and 3 – Upgrade of the N2 Section 5 between Lizmore and Heidelberg, Client: Aurecon on behalf of SANRAL
- **Traffic Safety Studies** for Roads Upgrades in Cofimvaba, Eastern Cape – Client: Cofimvaba Municipality
- **Road Safety Audit** Stage 1 and 3 – Improvement of Intersections between Olifantshoek and Kathu, Northern Cape, Client: Nadeson/Gibb on behalf of SANRAL
- **Road Safety Audit** Stage 3 – Upgrade of the Beacon Way Intersection on the N2 at Plettenberg Bay, Client: AECOM on behalf of SANRAL

- **Traffic Impact Assessment** for a proposed Primary School at Die Bos in Strand, Somerset West, Client: Edifice Consulting Engineers
- **Road Safety Audit** Stage 1 and 3 – Improvement of R75 between Port Elizabeth and Uitenhage, Eastern Cape, Client: SMEC on behalf of SANRAL

ROAN SOLAR PV 2 FACILITY

STORMWATER MANAGEMENT PLAN

APRIL 2022
REVISION 2

Prepared by:

JG AFRIKA (PTY) LTD

CAPE TOWN
P.O. Box 38561
Pinelands, 7430
021 530 1800
Email: capetown@jgafrika.com
Project director: M. Manson-Kullin

VERIFICATION PAGE	Form 4.3.1
	Rev 13

TITLE: ROAN SOLAR PV 2 FACILITY: STORMWATER MANAGEMENT PLAN		
JGA REF. NO.	**DATE:**	**REPORT STATUS**
5718/SW/PV2	20/04/2022	REV 2 (for issue)

CARRIED OUT BY:	**COMMISSIONED BY:**
JG AFRIKA (PTY) LTD **CAPE TOWN** P.O. Box 38561 Pinelands, Cape Town 7430 Tel.: +27 21 530 1800 Email: capetown@jgafrika.com	**AMDA November (Pty) Ltd** 302E Sunclare Building 21 Dreyer Str Claremont 7700 Tel: +27 63 296 5255 Email: raymond@amdadeveloments.co.za
AUTHOR	**CLIENT CONTACT PERSON**
G Joubert Pr Eng	Raymond Takuba

SYNOPSIS

Stormwater Management Plan for the proposed Roan solar PV 2 development near Hartbeesfontein, North West Province.

KEY WORDS:

Hydrology, Stormwater, Stormwater management, Solar.

QUALITY VERIFICATION

This report has been prepared under the controls established by a quality management system that meets the requirements of ISO9001: 2015 which has been independently certified by DEKRA Certification under certificate number 90906882

Verification	Capacity	Name	Signature	Date
By Author	Associate	G. Joubert		23/02/2022
Checked by:	Technical Director	D. Petersen		23/02/2022
Authorised by:	Technical Director	D. Petersen		23/02/2022

Filename:	X:\Projects - (In-progress)\5718 - Roan Solar PV SWMP (MMK)\103-Report only Projects\04-Docs & Reports\Reports\5718 Roan PV2 SWMP Rev02_20220420.docx

ROAN SOLAR PV 2 FACILITY
STORMWATER MANAGEMENT PLAN

TABLE OF CONTENTS

TABLES

FIGURES

ANNEXURES

1 TERMS OF REFERENCE

JG Afrika (Pty) Ltd was appointed by AMDA November (Pty) Ltd to provide a Stormwater Management Plan for the proposed Roan Solar PV facilities located south of Hartbeesfontein, North West Province. This report focusses on the western site, designated Roan PV 2.

This scope of this study includes the following:

- quantification of stormwater runoff and peak flows;
- development of strategies for stormwater management;
- Analysis of design concepts to accommodate the anticipated runoff, while ensuring continuity of natural drainage paths; and
- determination of appropriate mitigation measures, including erosion management, attenuation of flood peaks and pollution control.

2 DESCRIPTION OF THE SITE

2.1 Location

The proposed development centroid is located approximately 6 km south of Hartbeesfontein and the R507/503 Regional / Main Road linking Ottosdal and Klerksdorp, as indicated on **Figure 2-1: Locality**.

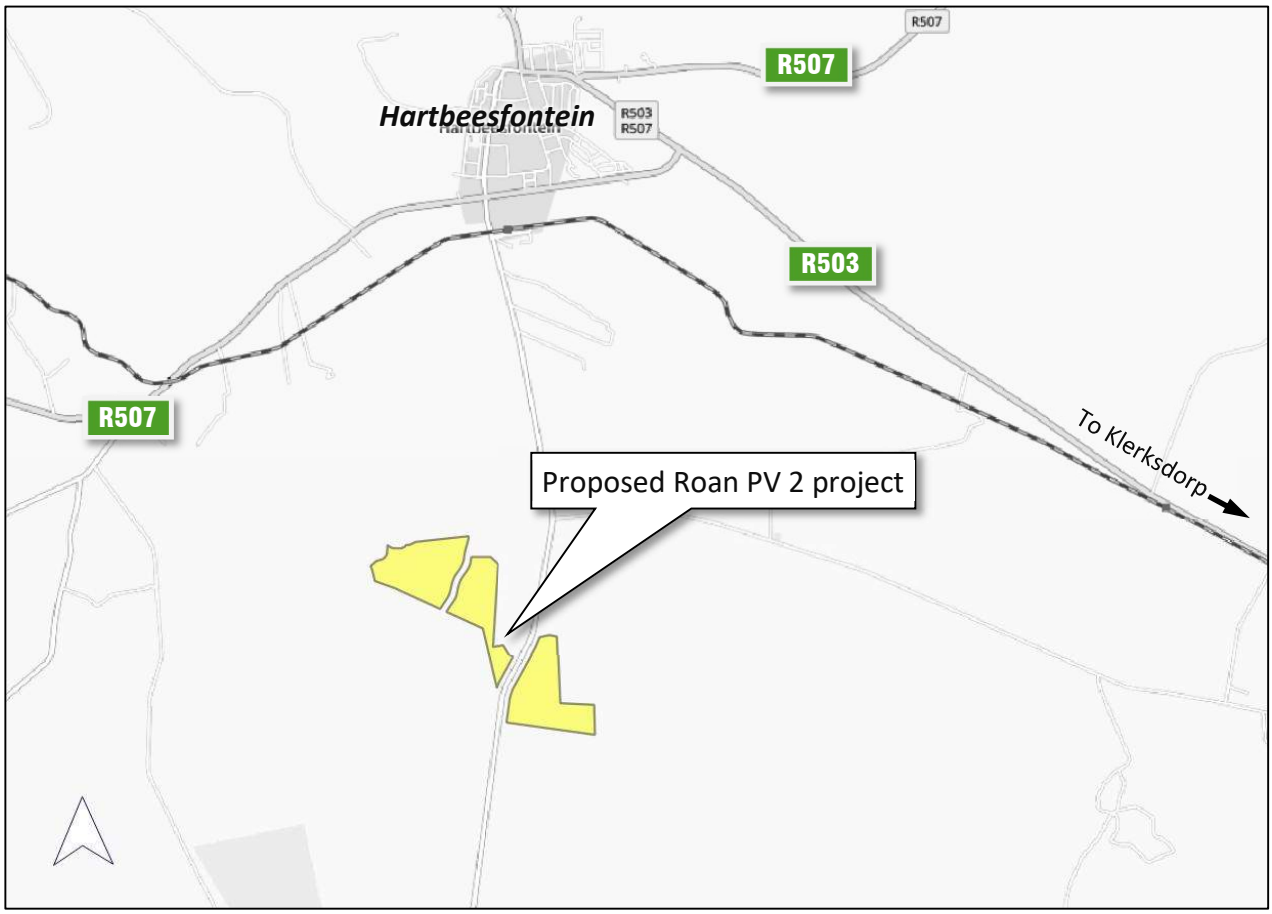


Figure 2-1: Locality

The proposed solar PV development is made up of 3 areas separated in a north / south direction by a non-perennial stream and a secondary road, respectively. The development extends over an area of 202 ha as shown on **Figure 2-2: Site**.

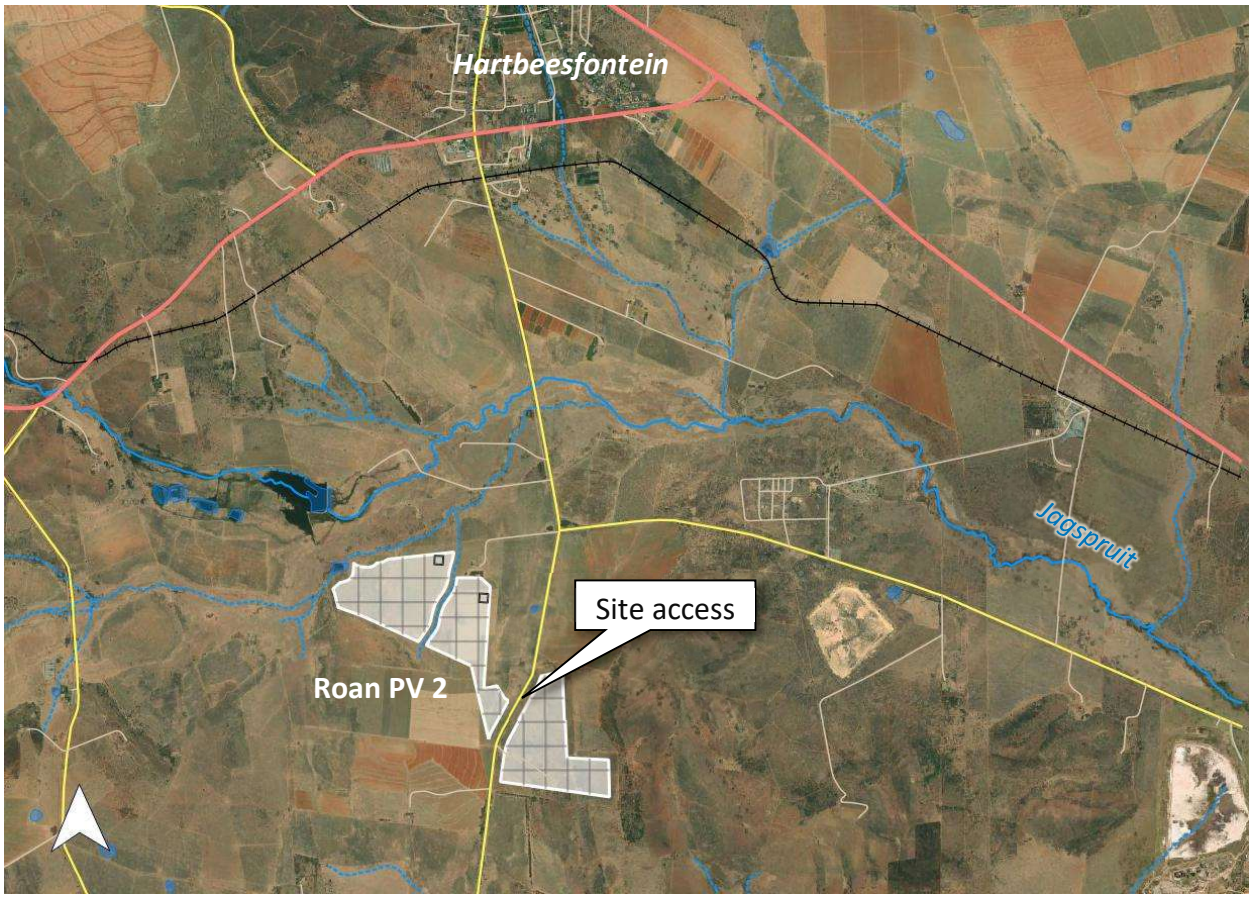


Figure 2-2: Site

2.2 Infrastructure

The site is currently accessed via an existing secondary road that links to Hartbeesfontein to the north as well as several gravel farm access roads that intersect with the secondary road. There are several proposed access points to the development. One such access in indicated above on **Figure 2-2: Site** and is shown on **Figure 2-3: Access**.

The secondary road is asphalt surfaced and its upkeep is the responsibility of the provincial roads authority.

Although there are widely-spaced culvert crossings beneath the secondary roads and gravel tracks adjacent to the proposed site, there is no other formal stormwater infrastructure and runoff is conveyed overland in open earth channels via preferential drainage routes.

2.3 Topography

The topography was assessed using digital elevation model (DEM) data from the 1:10 000 Orthophoto series provided by National Geo-Spatial Information (Department of Rural Development and Land Reform).

There is a ridge line to the east of the site, but the remainder of the catchment is made up of relatively flat (less than 1%), undulating terrain. This ridge acts as a watershed diverting runoff westwards across the eastern portion of the site. In the vicinity of the ridge, the topography is variable and consists of portions that are relatively steep (> 3%) areas with more obvious drainage routes.

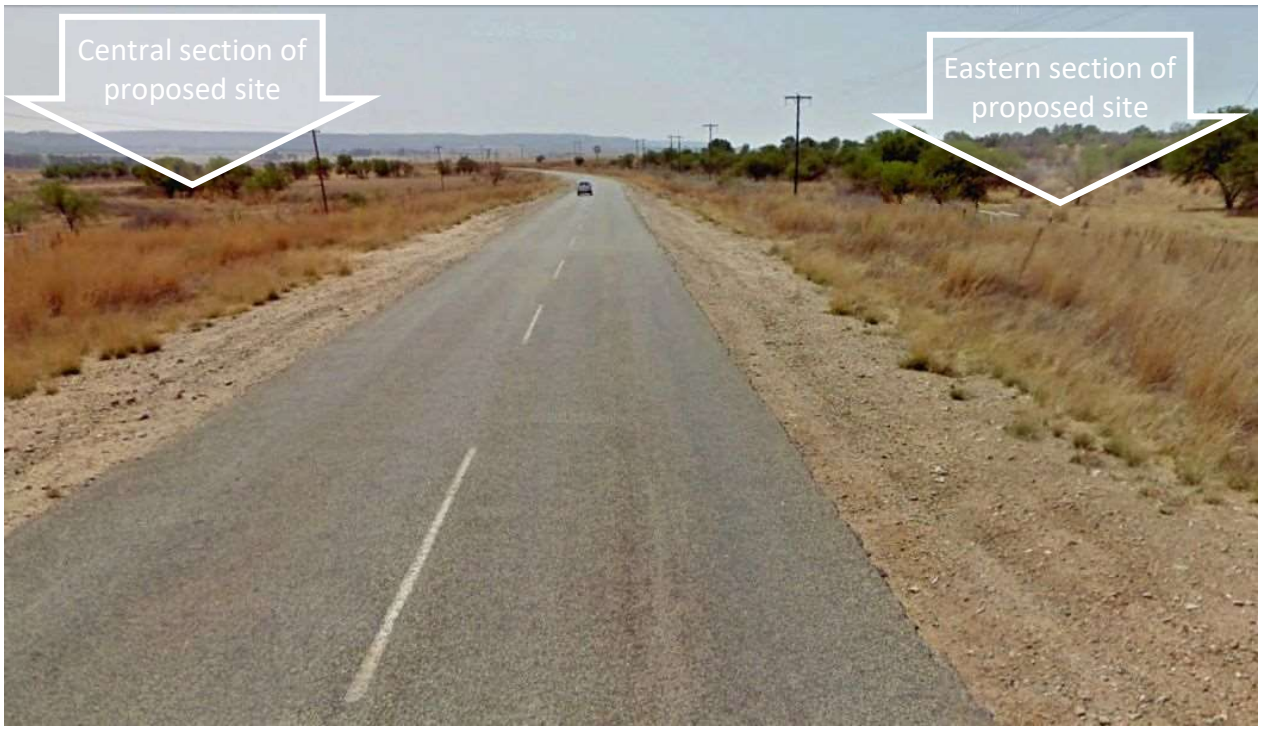


Figure 2-3: Access (secondary road heading north)

The aerial photography indicates the presence of farm dams and minor localised depressions where stormwater accumulates during rainfall events, although these are not evident from the contours.

The bulk of the stormwater from the catchment drains towards the Jagspruit River, which is located immediately to the north, but there is a minor component that is directed in a southerly direction into an unnamed non-perennial stream.

The topography is indicated on **Figure 2-4**.

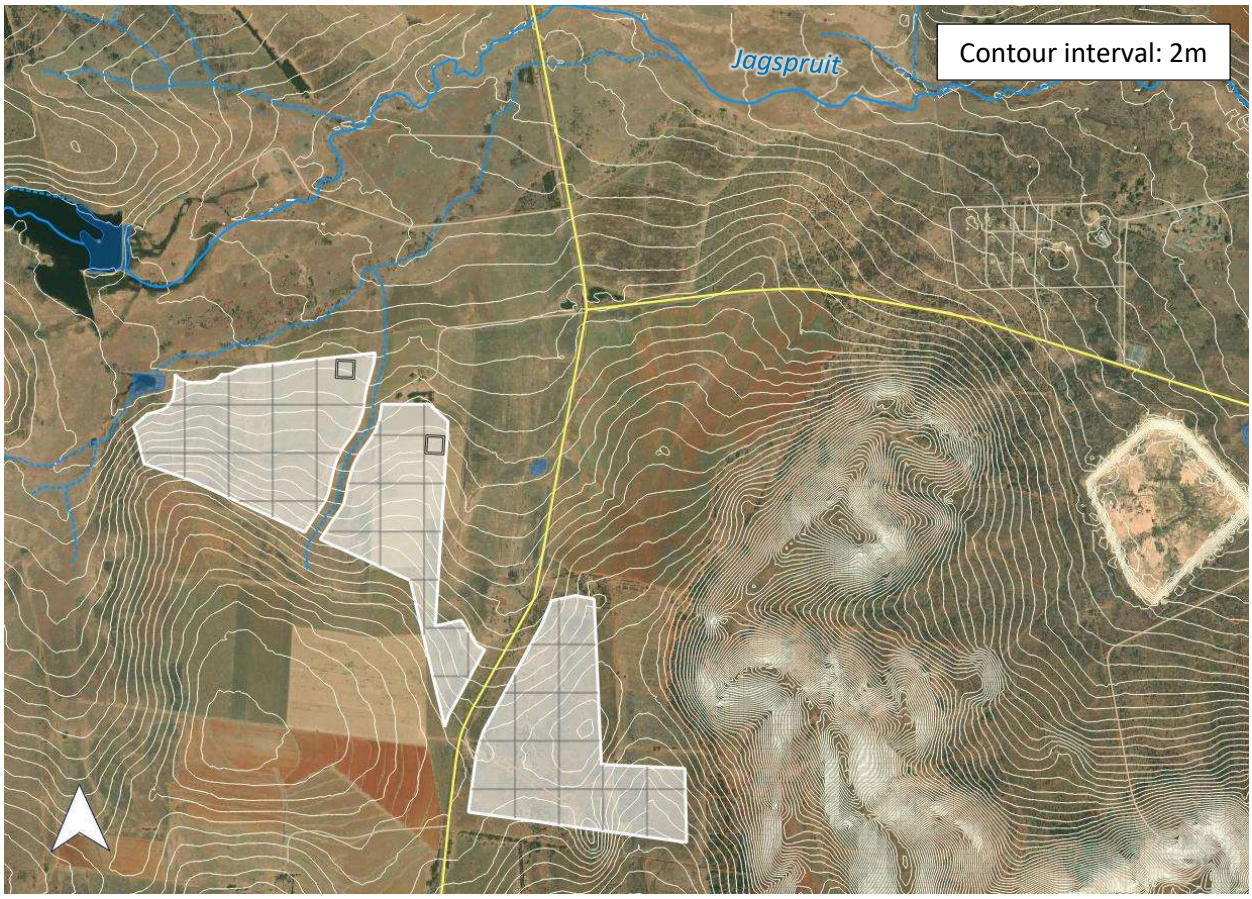


Figure 2-4: Topography

2.4 Catchment

The two catchments draining the area affecting the proposed development is shown on **Figure 2-5: Catchment**. The main catchment covers an area of 6.2 km^2 and the southern catchment (Sub-catchment 08) extends over an area of 3.1 km^2. Together, the total area drained is 9.4 km^2.

For modelling purposes, the two catchments were subdivided into 8 smaller sub-catchments. The modelling is covered in more detail in **Section 3**.

Even though there are relatively steep zones in the catchment, the majority of aboveground runoff is likely to be in the form of shallow sheet flow and consequently, flow velocities will be relatively low.

The proposed development does not encroach on the floodplain of the Jagspruit.

The above assessment is of a high level and appropriate to the scope of the study. Detailed survey will be required to determine the actual dimensions of drainage paths, but examination of the available topographical information and aerial photography reveals no obvious areas where erosion is taking place.

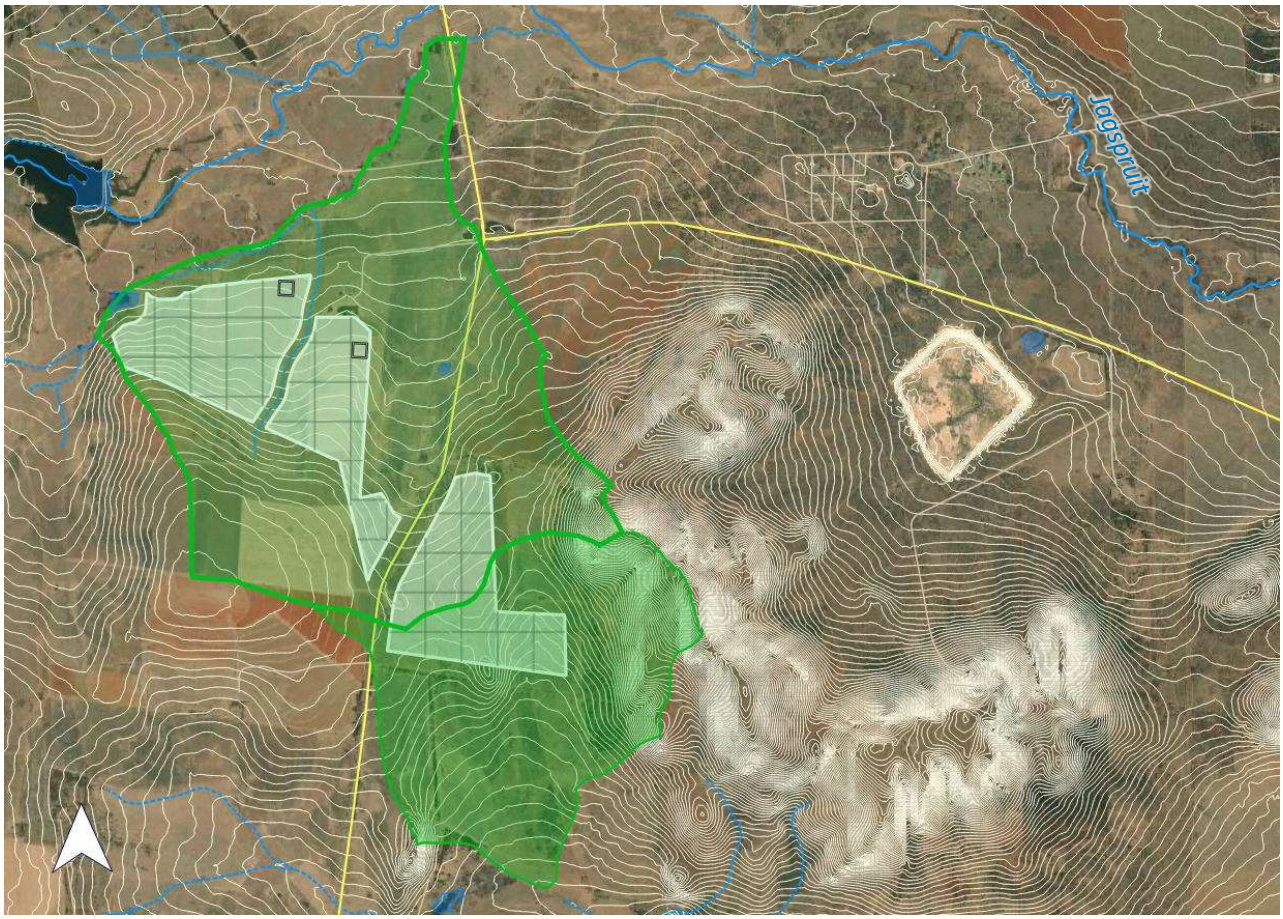


Figure 2-5: Catchment

2.5 Soils

Detailed geotechnical testing would be required to determine the necessary infiltration parameters for explicit groundwater modelling, but in terms of general hydrological response, the soils in the catchment fall into a single broad category.

The catchment consists of soil of intermediate depth (500mm - 1000mm) Hutton Form (Hu) that is mainly a combination of the Clansthal (Hu 24) and Msinga (Hu 26) Series. In terms of Textural Class, it is classified as sandy loam / sandy, clayey loam with a Soil Conservation Service (SCS) Grouping ranging from A to B and a low to moderate runoff potential.

2.6 Vegetation

The vegetation across the catchment is grassland interspersed with scrub and scattered shrubs, as indicated on **Figure 2-7**: **Vegetation**. There are portions that have been used for agriculture and where row cropping was used.

In hydrological terms, it can be classified as a combination of fallow row crops and veld or range in "good" condition.

Figure 2-6: Vegetation

3 MODELLING

The catchment was split into eight sub-catchments for modelling purposes (as shown on **Figure 3-1**) and these were modelled in EPA-SWMM 5.1, using the rainfall and runoff data below. To ensure consistency with the PV 2 project, an integrated model, incorporating the catchments affecting both PV 1 and PV 2 was compiled.

3.1 Design Rainfall

The Intensity-duration-frequency data was derived from *Rainfall Statistics for Design Flood Estimation in South Africa* (Smithers & Schulze. 2012) for reference point 26°49' S; 26°26 E. It is tabulated below for design storm events with return period of 5 and 50 years for various durations:

T (years)	Design storm duration								
	10 min	15 min	30 min	1 hr	2 hr	4 hr	8 hr	12 hr	24 hr
	Average intensity (mm/h)								
5	113.4	95.2	62.0	34.6	24.2	14.1	8.3	6.0	3.5
50	181.8	152.4	98.0	61.1	38.7	22.6	13.2	9.7	5.6

Table 3-1: Design Rainfall

3.2 Runoff Parameters

The runoff parameters used are listed below:

- Impervious area roughness coefficient: 0.018
- Pervious area roughness coefficient: 0.050
- Impervious area depression storage: 1 mm

- Pervious area depression storage: 5 mm
- Infiltration method: SCS
- SCS Curve Number (CN): Hu Form soils: 61

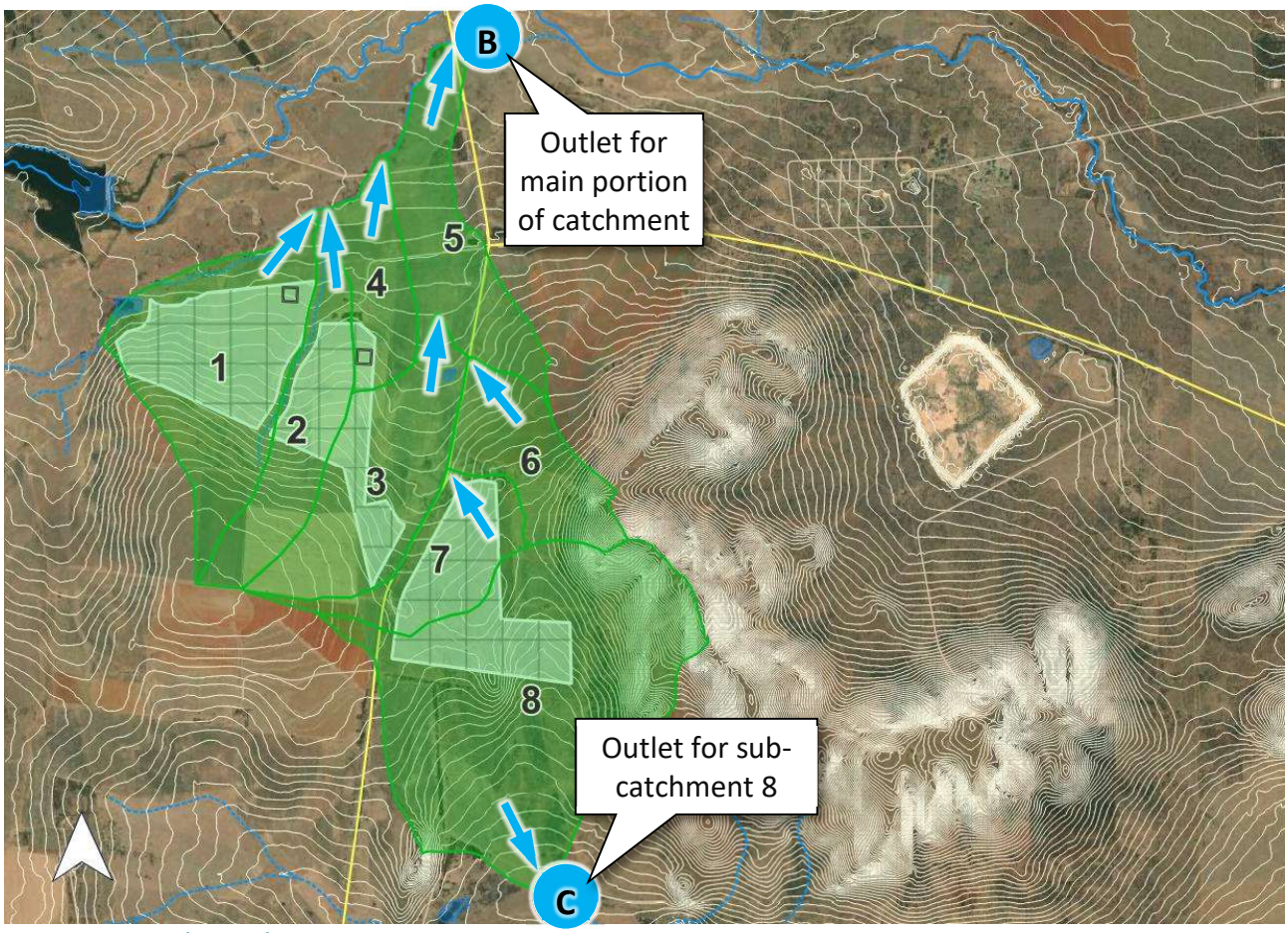


Figure 3-1: Sub-catchments

3.3 Pre-Development Runoff

Runoff was computed for both minor (5-year) and major (50-year) design events of various durations up to 24 hours. The peak flows were cross-checked via the Rational Method and found to be reasonable.

The peak flows are tabulated below:

Sub-Catchment	5-year return period		50-year return period	
	Peak flow (m^3/s)	Critical design storm duration (h)	Peak flow (m^3/s)	Critical design storm duration (h)
S01	1.20	8	3.44	4
S02	0.63	8	1.80	4
S03	0.90	4	2.59	4
S04	0.47	4	1.30	4
S05	0.64	8	1.78	4
S06	0.77	4	2.06	2
S07	0.58	4	1.63	4
S08	2.46	4	7.09	4

Table 3-2: Pre-development (existing) peak flows

Owing to the relatively pervious nature of the soil, the bulk of the rainfall resulting from short duration events infiltrates. It is only once the soil becomes saturated that substantial overland runoff takes place and consequently, longer duration storms produce the highest peak flows. Saturation takes place sooner for high-order events, so the peak flows typically occur for shorter duration design storms versus low-order events.

The peak flows for the various sub-catchments are of a similar order. The topography is such that the runoff is spread out in the lower reaches of the catchment. As a consequence, for design storm events of return period up to 50 years, flow velocities will be low (< 0.5m/s). Flow depths outside of preferential drainage paths are likely to be shallow, but where preferential drainage routes converge to form natural earth channels that are more clearly defined, the depth of flow will increase substantially. Flow depths of up to 1m can be anticipated.

Detailed survey will be required to model specific drainage paths and provide more accurate flow computations.

3.4 Post-Development Runoff

The primary difference between the pre-development and the post-development scenarios is the presence of the solar PV panels and associated infrastructure. The solar PV panels themselves are impervious, but since they are widely distributed and raised above natural ground level, they will not behave like typical hardened surfaces. Essentially, they do not interfere with infiltration to any significant degree and do not obstruct existing flow paths.

This does not apply to the access and internal roads or the site management / plant areas. These form effectively impervious surfaces and thus increase runoff. The increase in impervious area for the post-development scenario was measured using GIS overlays and estimated coverage percentages for the relevant items.

Runoff was computed for both minor (5-year) and major (50-year) design events of various durations up to 24 hours.

The peak flows are tabulated below:

Sub-Catchment	5-year return period		50-year return period	
	Peak flow (m^3/s)	% increase over pre-dev runoff	Peak flow (m^3/s)	% increase over pre-dev runoff
S01	1.47	22.5	3.91	13.7
S02	0.73	15.9	1.98	10.0
S03	0.99	10.0	2.74	5.8
S03	0.56	19.1	1.43	10.0
S05	0.64	0.0	1.78	0.0
S06	0.77	0.0	2.06	0.0
S07	0.69	19.0	1.81	11.0
S08	2.58	4.9	7.30	3.0

Table 3-3: Post-development sub-catchment peak flows

The increase in runoff from the various sub-catchments over the pre-development situation is small – both in quantity and percentage. Nevertheless, the increase does have an impact on the area downstream of the proposed development.

Consequently, post-development mitigation in the form of detention storage will be required to reduce the peak flows to align more closely with pre-development runoff. It would also be prudent to incorporate sediment management interventions to the detention areas to limit the degradation in the quality of the receiving waters.

In terms of aggregate peak flow, the post-development peaks arriving at Outlet Point B in the Jagspruit River (as indicated on **Figure 3-1: Sub-catchments**) is indicated below in **Table 3-4** and compared with the reduced post-development runoff that would result from the introduction of detention storage facilities to mitigate the peak flows.

Detention storage	50-year return period max peak flow (m^3/s)		Change	
	Pre-development	Post-development	(m^3/s)	%
No	13.15	14.28	1.13	8.6
Yes	13.15	12.80	-0.35	-2.7

Table 3-4: Change in maximum peak flow at Outlet B

3.5 Post-Development Storage

The storage requirements to reduce the peak flows from the 5-year return period design storm would fit within the footprint of a detention pond designed to accommodate flow from a 50-year return period design storm. Consequently, only the storage requirements for the 50-year event are reported on here.

The optimal locations for the detention ponds (indicated below on **Figure 3-2: Detention Pond Locations** as Storage Nodes 108, 118 and 228).

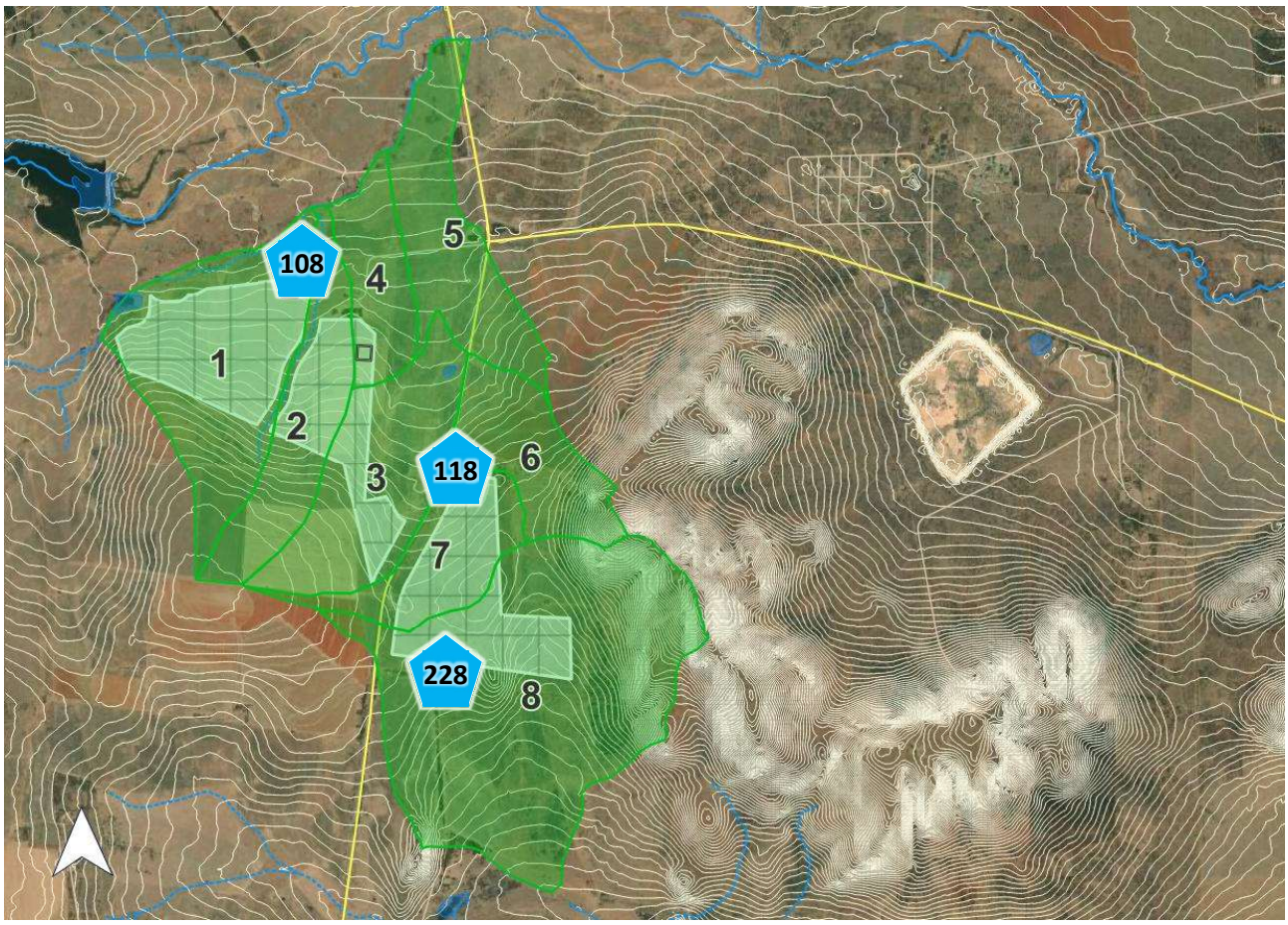


Figure 3-2: Detention Pond Locations

This selected locations allow the ponds to intercepts the bulk of the runoff from the main catchment and sub-catchment 8, given the natural drainage paths and other topographical constraints of the proposed development, while remaining close to the proposed development.

Alternative locations could be viable, but these would depend on factors such as property ownership, required link infrastructure and environmental considerations.

The required storage capacity and associated water depth for each detention pond is listed in **Table 3-5**, below and illustrated graphically on **Figure 3-3: Detention storage requirement per design storm duration.**

The detention ponds would function as “dry” facilities in that they would intercept runoff, detain it for a short duration and release it downstream at a controlled rate. They will not impede existing watercourses and will not “store” water. Consequently, they will not require a WUL.

Detention Pond	Max storage volume (x 10^3 m^3)	Max depth (m)	Critical storm duration (hours)
108	2.80	0.86	4
118	5.23	1.10	8
228	0.78	0.55	2

Table 3-5: Detention pond storage capacity for 50-year design storm

Figure 3-3: Detention storage requirement per design storm duration

The maximum water depth in Pond 118 could be a potential hazard to staff and would need to be addressed by means of an appropriate risk-management intervention – e.g. signage, area demarcation etc.

An example of a typical detention pond is indicated below on **Figure 3-4: Detention Pond Example**

Figure 3-4: Detention Pond Example

4 PROPOSED INFRASTRUCTURE

4.1 Proposed Infrastructure

It is anticipated that the Solar PV facility will contain the following infrastructure:

- On-site switching station / substation;
- Photovoltaic (PV) solar panels;
- Mounting structures to support the PV panels;
- On-site inverters;
- Transformer and internal electrical reticulation (underground cabling);
- Auxiliary buildings (such as gate houses and security, control centre, office, warehouse, canteen and visitors centre);
- Temporary laydown areas;
- Internal and perimeter access roads and fencing;
- Rainwater tanks; and
- Battery Energy Storage System.

Access will be gained either via the existing secondary road or from farm access roads linking to the secondary road. No improvements to the secondary road's existing surfaced standard are

anticipated, but suitable provisions for the management of stormwater may be required. This will require a detailed survey and assessment of the condition and capacity of existing culvert crossings. The gravel farm access roads will require upgrading to an appropriate standard if these are used for access. This includes the provision of stormwater management interventions.

4.2 Pre-Construction Conditional Assessment

A conditional assessment of the site and access roads must be carried out prior to the commencement of construction. The areas to be used for the site camp, stockpiles and other temporary works must similarly be assessed.

The existing state of the downstream properties and infrastructure, as well as areas earmarked for temporary works, must be photographed and compiled into a baseline record.

4.3 Proposed Stormwater Mitigation Measures

To avoid creating downstream issues, it is essential that any disturbance of the areas earmarked for development must be minimised. In this regard, vegetation must be preserved; overland runoff must be permitted to continue unimpeded as far as possible; and concentration of flow must be avoided.

4.3.1 Internal and Perimeter Access Roads

Gravel access roads should be constructed at-grade to allow continuity of flow from upstream to downstream. Side drains will interrupt and concentrate the natural flow paths and should be avoided where possible. Where the roads are intersected by preferential drainage paths, stabilisation by means of stone protection on either side will mitigate against scour.

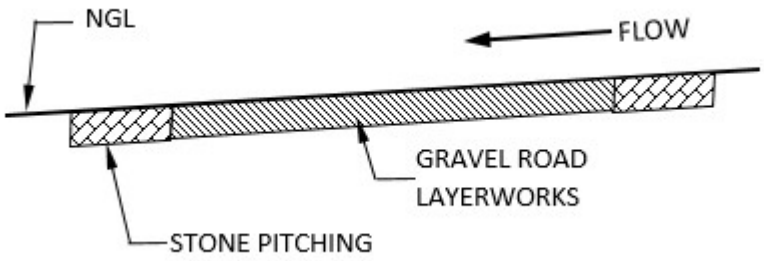


Figure 4-1: Access Road Cross-Section

4.3.2 Structures

Structures (e.g. substations, buildings etc.) will need to be protected by means of channels to divert runoff around them. However, the runoff must be returned to its original flow path as rapidly as possible, with suitable erosion protection downstream of the structure to reduce the velocity. Gabions or stone pitching should be used to encourage infiltration.

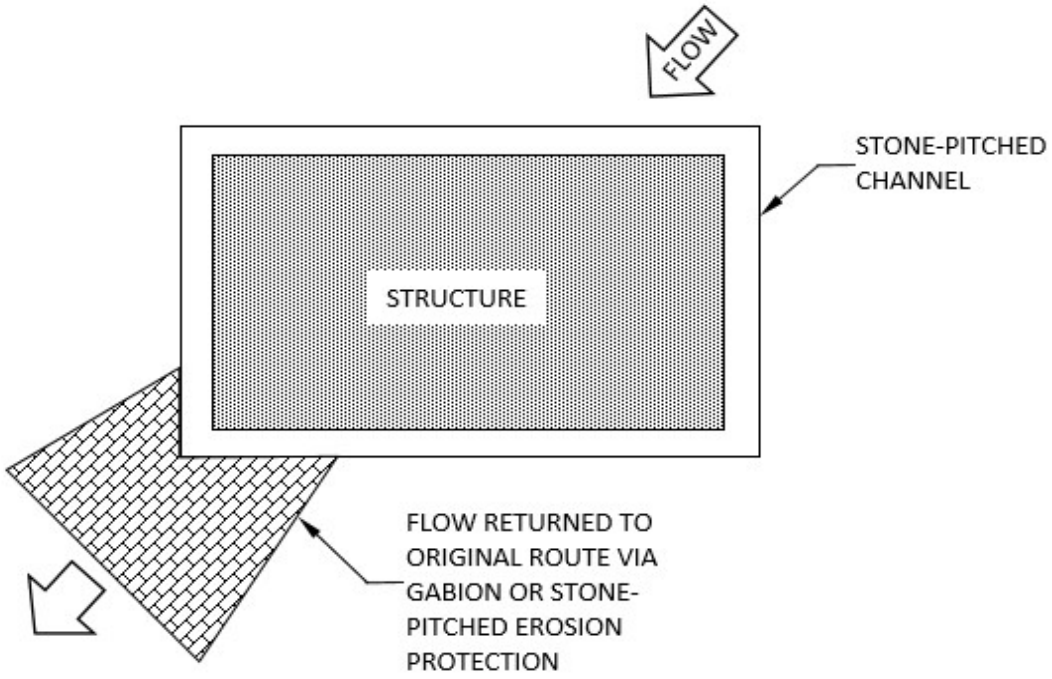


Figure 4-2: Plan View on Typical Structure

4.3.3 PV Panels

The supports to the PV panels should be designed to limit their impact on natural drainage patterns.

If the panels are constructed close to ground level, the runoff from individual panels will not increase the risk of erosion, irrespective of the panel orientation.

4.4 Management of Stormwater Impacts During Construction

4.4.1 Open trenches

Open trenches will be kept to a minimum and will be filled in progressively as construction proceeds. Excavated material to be used as backfill will be placed close to the trench on the upstream side to avoid loose material from washing away.

4.4.2 Stockpiles

Material stockpiles must be located away from any identified preferential drainage paths. Gravel, sand and stone stockpiles must be covered or kept damp to minimise dust. Temporary silt curtains or straw bales must be located immediately downstream of stockpiles to intercept grit wash-off.

4.4.3 Construction traffic

The crossing of any preferential drainage paths by construction traffic must be limited to a set number of strategic crossing points. Use of the final access road reserves during construction would address this issue. The crossings must be protected with stone pitching and the downstream drainage paths must be protected with appropriately-placed temporary silt curtains or straw bales.

Refuelling and maintenance of construction vehicles must be carried out in a controlled manner on impermeable surfaces to avoid hydrocarbon contamination of the soil.

4.4.4 Rehabilitation

Periodic monitoring during construction will be necessary to ensure that if damage does occur, it is addressed immediately and not be permitted to escalate.

Areas not occupied by permanent infrastructure (e.g. roads, parking areas etc.) must be rehabilitated to their original condition after construction is complete.

Any downstream damage directly attributable to construction activities must be repaired and the areas returned to their original condition.

4.5 Operation Phase Management of Stormwater Impacts

4.5.1 Detention

On-site treatment of stormwater will be by means of both formal and informal infiltration. The construction of formal structures such detention ponds and swales linking to them will encourage infiltration.

4.5.2 Waste Water Management

The washing of the solar panels will take place at set intervals using clean water to remove wind-blown dust and accumulated residue. As long as no detergents are used, there is consequently no risk of groundwater pollution, as the material that will collect on the panels currently settles directly on the ground surface and/or vegetation in the area.

The volume of water required for cleaning panels is approximately 3 litres/m^2 and the process will be carried out over a period of several weeks. The maximum flow will therefore be limited by the number of simultaneous cleaning operations taking place in close proximity to one another. The flow can therefore be considered negligible when compared to the runoff from design storm events. In this regard, the cleaning of panels is also not likely to take place during rainfall events of any significance.

The low flow rates mean that there is no erosion risk from the cleaning operation. Furthermore, owing to the infiltration potential of the soil, the cleaning water will be absorbed directly into the soil and no additional collection or treatment will be required.

4.5.3 Monitoring

Runoff from the site will be largely unchanged. Periodic monitoring of drainage paths and access roads downstream of the site must be done against the baseline assessment during the construction maintenance period to check for evidence of scour and / or siltation. Any damage directly attributable to operational activities will need to be repaired and the drainage paths returned to their original condition. Appropriate mitigation measures will need to be put in place to prevent recurrence of damage.

The erosion management strategy can be summarised in the following flow-chart:

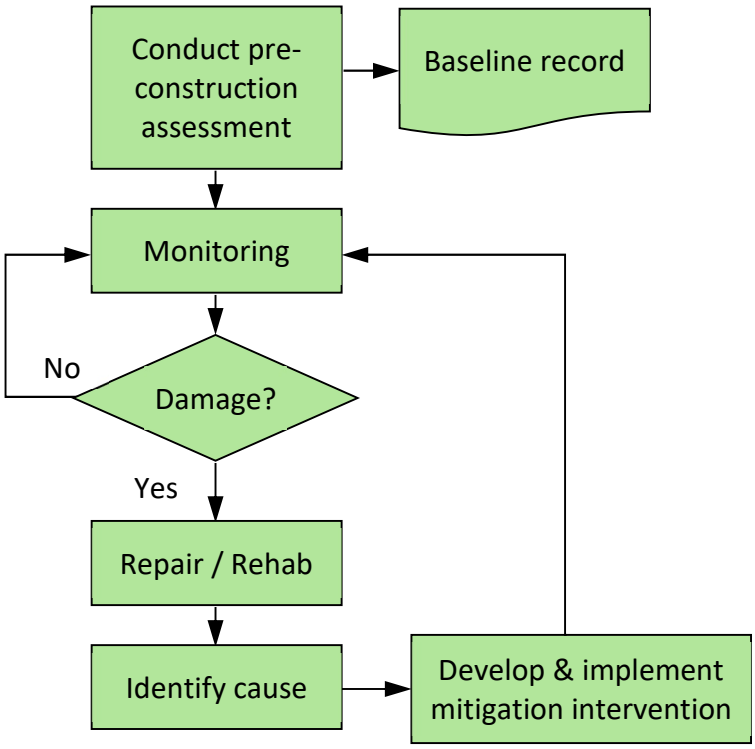


Figure 4-3: Erosion Management flow chart

5 CONCLUSIONS AND RECOMMENDATIONS

It may be concluded that:

- As long as the proposed new infrastructure is designed to maintain existing drainage patterns, the requirement for formal stormwater interventions will be limited in scope to detention storage, open channels and minor conduits;
- A pre-construction assessment will be necessary to ensure that construction and operational stormwater impacts are managed;
- For most storm events, overland flow via existing drainage paths will be the primary form of conveyance; and
- Detention storage will be required to limit post-development runoff to pre-development levels. The specific requirements are covered in detail in Sub-section 3.5.

It is recommended that:

- The safety aspects of proposed detention ponds be allowed for in the development planning;
- The interventions described in Sub-sections 4.2 to 4.5 be implemented; and
- The interventions described in Sub-section 4.4 be incorporated into the construction specification.

6 REFERENCES

1. Smithers, JC & Schulze, RE. 2012. *Rainfall Statistics for Design Flood Estimation in South Africa*. WRC Project K5/1060.
2. Bailey, AK & Pitman, WV. 2015. *Water Resources of South Africa, 2012 Study (WR2012)*. WRC Report No K5/2143/1.
3. Schmidt, EJ & Schulze, RE. 1987. *Flood Volume and Peak Discharge from Small Catchments in Southern Africa, based on the SCS Technique*. WRC Report No TT 31/87.

Annexure A: Modelling Results

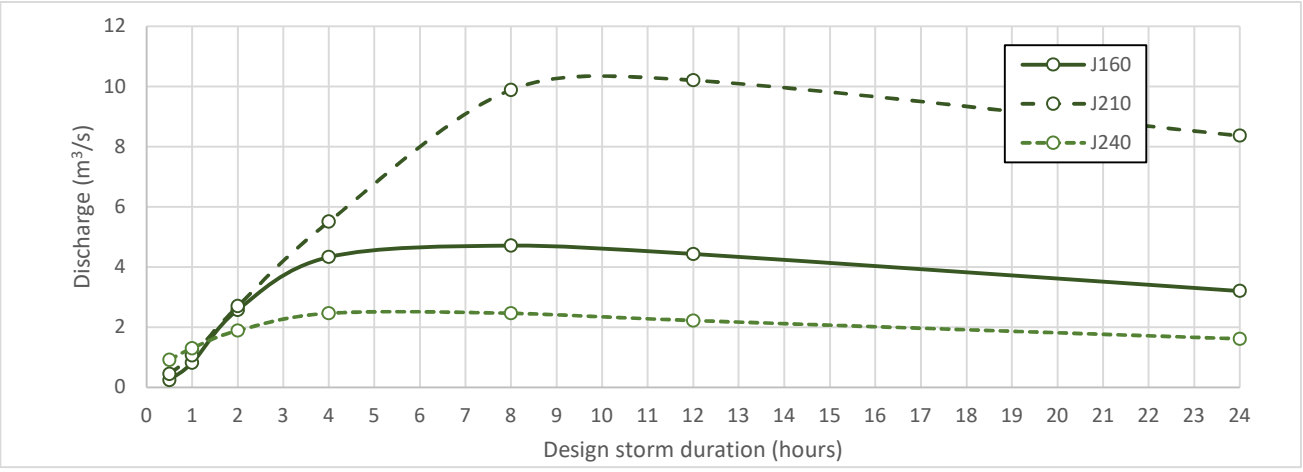
Roan PV SWMP

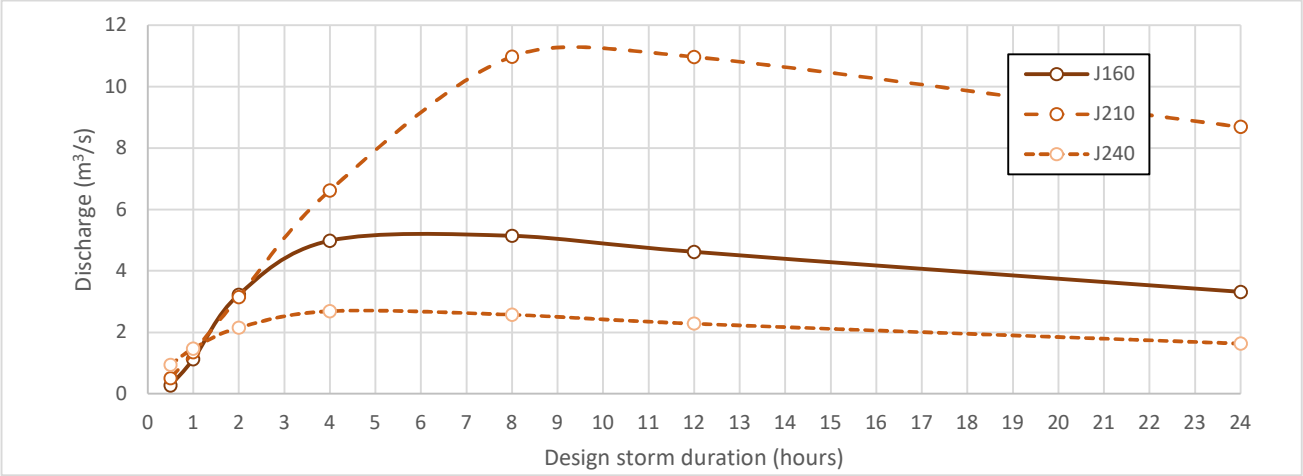
SWMM summary results (Runoff)

Rev 01 08/02/2022

Peak runoff

Sub-Catchment	Discharge point	Peak runoff (m^3/s) for Return Period T = 5 years								
		Design storm duration (hours)								
		0.17	0.25	0.5	1	2	4	8	12	24
Pre-development										
S01	J110	0.21	0.30	0.44	0.63	0.91	1.19	1.20	1.08	0.78
S02	J110	0.11	0.15	0.23	0.33	0.47	0.62	0.63	0.57	0.42
S03	J140	0.16	0.23	0.33	0.48	0.69	0.90	0.90	0.81	0.59
S04	J150	0.09	0.13	0.19	0.27	0.38	0.47	0.44	0.38	0.27
S05	J160	0.09	0.13	0.20	0.29	0.42	0.59	0.64	0.60	0.46
S06	J130	0.18	0.25	0.36	0.50	0.67	0.77	0.66	0.55	0.37
S07	J120	0.11	0.15	0.23	0.32	0.46	0.58	0.56	0.49	0.35
S08	J240	0.43	0.62	0.91	1.30	1.88	2.46	2.46	2.22	1.61
S10	J170	0.14	0.20	0.30	0.44	0.66	0.94	1.08	1.06	0.86
S11	J180	0.20	0.29	0.43	0.63	0.94	1.35	1.55	1.52	1.24
S12	J200	0.26	0.37	0.55	0.78	1.13	1.50	1.51	1.37	1.00
S13	J190	0.45	0.63	0.92	1.29	1.76	2.08	1.84	1.55	1.06
S14	J210	0.17	0.24	0.36	0.54	0.82	1.21	1.45	1.48	1.28
Post-development										
S01	J110	0.25	0.37	0.58	0.85	1.19	1.47	1.37	1.19	0.83
S02	J110	0.12	0.18	0.28	0.41	0.58	0.73	0.70	0.61	0.43
S03	J140	0.17	0.25	0.38	0.54	0.77	0.99	0.96	0.85	0.60
S03	J150	0.11	0.16	0.24	0.35	0.47	0.56	0.49	0.41	0.28
S05	J160	0.09	0.13	0.20	0.29	0.42	0.59	0.64	0.60	0.46
S06	J130	0.18	0.25	0.36	0.50	0.67	0.77	0.66	0.55	0.37
S07	J120	0.13	0.19	0.29	0.42	0.58	0.69	0.63	0.53	0.37
S08	J240	0.46	0.66	0.97	1.40	2.00	2.58	2.54	2.27	1.63
S10	J170	0.15	0.22	0.34	0.51	0.76	1.07	1.18	1.14	0.89
S11	J180	0.22	0.32	0.50	0.75	1.12	1.57	1.73	1.66	1.30
S12	J200	0.28	0.41	0.61	0.88	1.26	1.62	1.60	1.43	1.02
S13	J190	0.52	0.74	1.08	1.51	2.01	2.28	1.94	1.62	1.09
S14	J210	0.18	0.26	0.40	0.61	0.92	1.34	1.57	1.58	1.33





Peak flow

Conduit	Discharge point	Peak flow (m^3/s) for Return Period T = 5 years								
		Design storm duration (hours)								
		0.17	0.25	0.5	1	2	4	8	12	24
Pre-development										
R_160-170	J160	0.10	0.14	0.24	0.81	2.57	4.33	4.71	4.43	3.20
CH210-220	J210	0.18	0.26	0.45	1.06	2.69	5.50	9.89	10.21	8.36
CH240-260	J240	0.43	0.62	0.91	1.30	1.88	2.46	2.46	2.22	1.61
Post-development										
R_160-170	J160	0.10	0.14	0.27	1.13	3.23	4.98	5.14	4.62	3.32
CH210-220	J210	0.19	0.28	0.50	1.35	3.15	6.62	10.98	10.97	8.69
CH240-260	J240	0.41	0.60	0.94	1.47	2.15	2.69	2.57	2.28	1.63

% Change in peak flow (Post - Pre) per storm event										
R_160-170	J160	1.05	0.71	15.61	38.50	25.46	15.16	9.22	4.24	3.53
CH210-220	J210	5.71	8.14	12.58	27.72	16.98	20.29	11.02	7.43	3.89
CH240-260	J240	-3.72	-3.23	3.74	13.23	14.41	9.27	4.59	2.79	1.43

Post-development with mitigation										
R_160-170	J160	0.01	0.14	0.27	1.10	3.13	4.85	5.08	4.59	3.31
CH210-220	J210	0.18	0.27	0.46	1.24	2.77	7.11	10.97	10.91	8.67
CH240-260	J240	0.41	0.58	0.89	1.41	2.10	2.67	2.57	2.28	1.63

Change in maximum peak flow

Discharge Point	Peak flow (m^3/s)		Change	
	Pre-dev	Post-dev	(m^3/s)	%
R_160-170	4.71	5.14	0.43	9.2
CH210-220	10.21	10.98	0.77	7.5
CH240-260	2.46	2.69	0.23	9.3

Change in maximum peak flow with mitigation

Discharge Point	Peak flow (m^3/s)		Change	
	Pre-dev	Post-dev	(m^3/s)	%
R_160-170	4.71	5.08	0.37	7.8
CH210-220	10.21	10.97	0.76	7.4
CH240-260	2.46	2.67	0.21	8.5

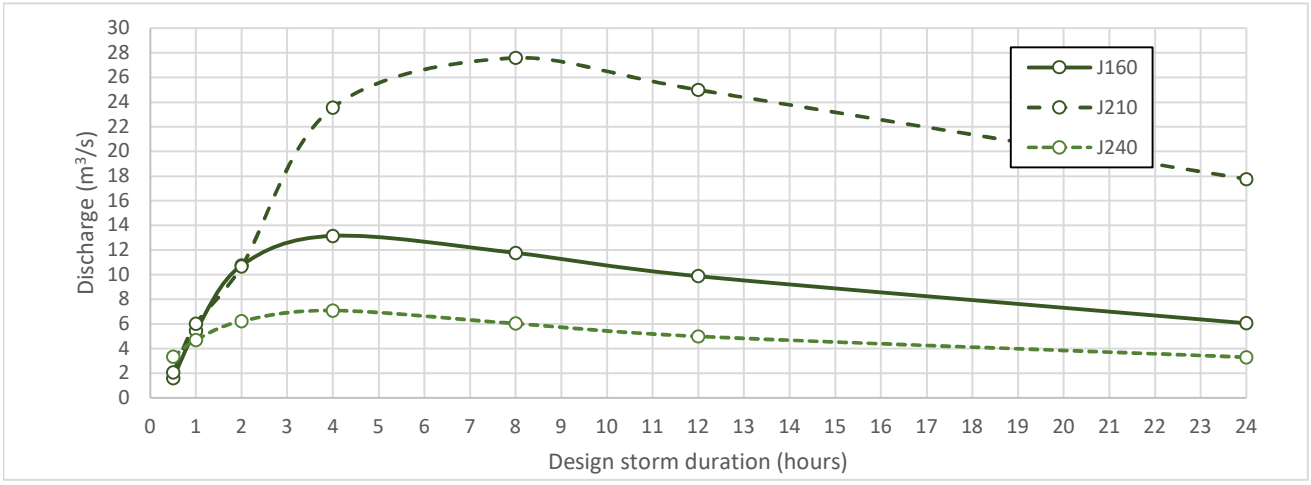
Roan PV SWMP

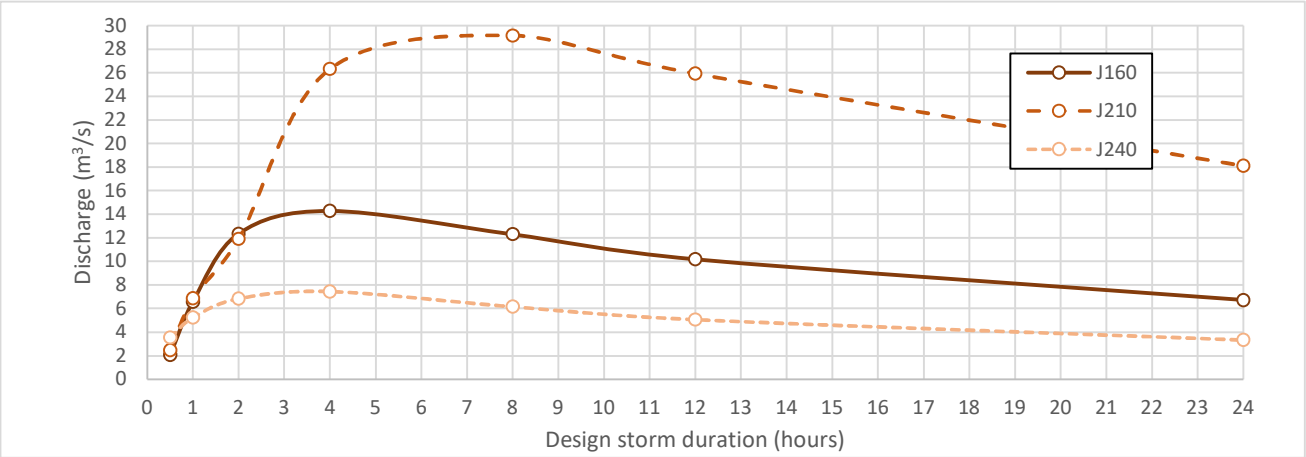
SWMM summary results (Runoff)

Rev 01 08/02/2022

Peak runoff

Sub-Catchment	Discharge point	Peak runoff (m^3/s) for Return Period T = 50 years								
		Design storm duration (hours)								
		0.17	0.25	0.5	1	2	4	8	12	24
Pre-development										
S01	J110	0.85	1.17	1.61	2.27	3.02	3.44	2.93	2.43	1.61
S02	J110	0.44	0.60	0.83	1.18	1.57	1.80	1.55	1.29	0.85
S03	J140	0.64	0.89	1.22	1.72	2.28	2.59	2.20	1.82	1.20
S04	J150	0.36	0.50	0.68	0.95	1.21	1.30	1.04	0.84	0.55
S05	J160	0.38	0.52	0.73	1.05	1.45	1.78	1.64	1.42	0.97
S06	J130	0.70	0.96	1.29	1.72	2.06	2.00	1.48	1.17	0.75
S07	J120	0.44	0.60	0.83	1.15	1.49	1.63	1.33	1.09	0.71
S08	J240	1.75	2.42	3.33	4.70	6.23	7.09	6.03	4.99	3.30
S10	J170	0.57	0.80	1.11	1.62	2.29	2.94	2.89	2.58	1.83
S11	J180	0.82	1.14	1.59	2.32	3.28	4.23	4.17	3.73	2.65
S12	J200	1.05	1.45	2.00	2.83	3.78	4.34	3.72	3.10	2.06
S13	J190	1.80	2.46	3.32	4.49	5.52	5.53	4.19	3.33	2.14
S14	J210	0.70	0.97	1.36	2.01	2.89	3.89	4.07	3.77	2.80
Post-development										
S01	J110	0.99	1.41	2.00	2.82	3.63	3.91	3.15	2.55	1.66
S02	J110	0.49	0.70	0.98	1.38	1.80	1.98	1.63	1.34	0.87
S03	J140	0.69	0.97	1.34	1.89	2.47	2.74	2.27	1.86	1.22
S03	J150	0.43	0.60	0.83	1.14	1.41	1.43	1.10	0.87	0.56
S05	J160	0.38	0.52	0.73	1.05	1.45	1.78	1.64	1.42	0.97
S06	J130	0.70	0.96	1.29	1.72	2.06	2.00	1.48	1.17	0.75
S07	J120	0.51	0.72	1.00	1.39	1.75	1.81	1.41	1.13	0.73
S08	J240	1.83	2.54	3.51	4.94	6.50	7.30	6.13	5.05	3.33
S10	J170	0.61	0.87	1.24	1.82	2.55	3.20	3.05	2.68	1.86
S11	J180	0.89	1.26	1.81	2.66	3.72	4.67	4.45	3.90	2.71
S12	J200	1.13	1.57	2.18	3.08	4.05	4.55	3.83	3.16	2.08
S13	J190	2.00	2.76	3.74	5.01	6.01	5.81	4.31	3.40	2.17
S14	J210	0.73	1.03	1.48	2.20	3.15	4.16	4.26	3.90	2.85





Peak flow

Conduit	Discharge point	Peak flow (m^3/s) for Return Period T = 50 years								
		Design storm duration (hours)								
		0.17	0.25	0.5	1	2	4	8	12	24
Pre-development										
R_160-170	J160	0.40	0.59	1.60	5.44	10.75	13.15	11.76	9.88	6.06
CH210-220	J210	0.75	1.11	2.07	6.01	10.68	23.57	27.59	25.00	17.76
CH240-260	J240	1.75	2.42	3.33	4.70	6.23	7.09	6.03	4.99	3.30
Post-development										
R_160-170	J160	0.41	0.60	2.07	6.57	12.34	14.28	12.30	10.18	6.72
CH210-220	J210	0.79	1.19	2.46	6.86	11.90	26.32	29.15	25.92	18.10
CH240-260	J240	1.70	2.41	3.53	5.23	6.83	7.44	6.15	5.06	3.33

% Change in peak flow (Post - Pre) per storm event										
R_160-170	J160	0.74	1.69	28.74	20.81	14.75	8.59	4.61	3.06	10.89
CH210-220	J210	5.31	7.11	19.09	14.07	11.42	11.65	5.64	3.70	1.90
CH240-260	J240	-3.03	-0.54	5.95	11.23	9.70	4.95	2.06	1.38	0.85

Post-development with mitigation										
R_160-170	J160	0.41	0.61	1.90	5.86	10.95	12.80	11.53	9.81	6.69
CH210-220	J210	0.75	1.10	1.98	4.87	12.06	24.49	26.74	24.79	18.04
CH240-260	J240	1.64	2.27	3.20	4.87	6.58	7.37	6.14	5.06	3.33

Change in maximum peak flow

Discharge Point	Peak flow (m^3/s)		Change	
	Pre-dev	Post-dev	(m^3/s)	%
R_160-170	13.15	14.28	1.13	8.6
CH210-220	27.59	29.15	1.56	5.6
CH240-260	7.09	7.44	0.35	5.0

Change in maximum peak flow with mitigation

Discharge Point	Peak flow (m^3/s)		Change	
	Pre-dev	Post-dev	(m^3/s)	%
R_160-170	13.15	12.80	-0.35	-2.7
CH210-220	27.59	26.74	-0.85	-3.1
CH240-260	7.09	7.37	0.28	4.0
AGGREGATE	47.83	46.91	-0.92	-1.9

Roan PV SWMP
SWMM summary results (Storage)
Rev 03 10/02/2022

Detention pond storage requirements

Outlet Node	Pond Name	Depth and storage volume for Return Period T = 50 years								
		Design storm duration (hours)								
		0.17	0.25	0.5	1	2	4	8	12	24
Pond depth (m)										
J110	ST108	0.21	0.25	0.33	0.48	0.66	0.86	0.84	0.69	0.42
J120	ST118	0.24	0.33	0.52	0.59	0.80	1.05	1.10	1.01	0.58
J200	ST198	0.36	0.41	0.46	0.82	1.20	1.52	1.50	1.30	0.77
J230	ST228	0.36	0.42	0.47	0.51	0.55	0.50	0.39	0.34	0.26
Pond storage (x 10^3 m^3)										
J110	ST108	0.01	0.03	0.13	0.52	1.35	2.80	2.57	1.55	0.32
J120	ST118	0.18	0.30	0.47	1.01	2.33	4.60	5.23	4.20	0.94
J200	ST198	0.03	0.13	0.66	2.45	6.69	13.21	12.92	8.47	2.10
J230	ST228	0.19	0.34	0.50	0.64	0.78	0.60	0.26	0.14	0.04